FORD **ESCAPE / KUGA Owner's Manual**



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2017

All rights reserved.

Part Number: TF 19A321 AD 20170124114216

Table of Contents

Introduction
About This Manual....5
Symbols Glossary....5
Replacement Parts Recommendation....7
Mobile Communications Equipment....8

At a Glance
At a Glance....9

Child Safety
Child Restraints....15
Selecting a Child Restraint System....16
Installing Child Restraints....16
Child Restraint Anchorage Locations....17
Protecting Larger Children....18
Checking Seatbelt Fit....19
Child Safety Locks....19

Seatbelts
Principle of Operation....20
Fastening the Seatbelts....21
Seatbelt Height Adjustment....22
Seatbelt Reminder....22
Seatbelt Maintenance....23

Supplementary Restraints System
Principle of Operation....24
Driver Airbag....24
Passenger Airbag....25
Side Airbags....25
Driver Knee Airbag....26
Side Curtain Airbags....26

Keys and Remote Controls
General Information on Radio Frequencies....27
Remote Control....27
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control....29

Doors and Locks
Locking and Unlocking....30
Manual Liftgate....32
Power Liftgate....33
Keyless Entry....35

Security
Passive Anti-Theft System....38
Anti-Theft Alarm....38

Steering Wheel
Adjusting the Steering Wheel....39
Audio Control....39
Voice Control....41
Cruise Control....41
Information Display Control....41

Wipers and Washers
Windshield Wipers....42
Autowipers....42
Windshield Washers....43
Rear Window Wiper and Washers....43

Lighting
General Information....45
Lighting Control....45
Autolamps....46
Instrument Lighting Dimmer....46
Headlamp Exit Delay....46
Daytime Running Lamps....47
Automatic High Beam Control....47
Front Fog Lamps....48
Rear Fog Lamps....48
Headlamp Leveling....49
Cornering Lamps....50

Escape/Kuga (CBS) Australia, Vehicles Built From: 08-09-2014, TF 19A321 AD enAUS

Table of Contents

Direction Indicators....50
Interior Lamps....51
Ambient Lighting....51

Windows and Mirrors

Power Windows....53
Global Opening and Closing....54
Exterior Mirrors....55
Interior Mirror....58
Sun Visors....58
Moonroof....58

Instrument Cluster

Gauges....60
Warning Lamps and Indicators....61
Audible Warnings and Indicators....64

Information Displays

General Information....66
Clock....72
Trip Computer....72
Personalized Settings....72
Information Messages....72

Climate Control

Principle of Operation....85
Air Vents....85
Automatic Climate Control....86
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate....88
Heated Windows and Mirrors....91
Cabin Air Filter....91

Seats

Sitting in the Correct Position....93
Head Restraints....94
Manual Seats....95
Power Seats....96
Rear Seats....98
Heated Seats....99
Rear Seat Armrest....99

Auxiliary Power Points

Auxiliary Power Points....100

Storage Compartments

Cup Holders....102
Overhead Console....102
Folding Tray....102

Starting and Stopping the Engine

General Information....103
Ignition Switch....103
Keyless Starting....104
Steering Wheel Lock....106
Starting a Gasoline Engine....107
Starting a Diesel Engine....108
Diesel Particulate Filter....108
Switching Off the Engine....109

Unique Driving Characteristics

Auto-Start-Stop....110

Fuel and Refueling

Safety Precautions....112
Fuel Quality - Diesel....113
Fuel Quality - Gasoline....113
Running Out of Fuel....114
Catalytic Converter....115
Refueling....115

Transmission

Manual Transmission....118
Automatic Transmission - 6-Speed Automatic Transmission - 6F35/ 6-Speed PowerShift Transmission - MPS6/6DCT450....118

Table of Contents

Hill Start Assist.....122

Four-Wheel Drive

Principle of Operation.....124
Using Four-Wheel Drive.....124

Brakes

General Information.....129
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....129
Parking Brake.....130

Traction Control

Principle of Operation.....131
Using Traction Control.....131

Stability Control

Principle of Operation.....132
Using Stability Control.....132

Parking Aids

Principle of Operation.....133
Parking Aid.....133
Active Park Assist.....135
Rear View Camera.....137

Cruise Control

Principle of Operation.....141
Using Cruise Control.....141
Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....142

Driving Aids

Speed Limiter.....150
Driver Alert.....151
Lane Keeping System.....152
Blind Spot Information System.....155
Active City Stop.....157
Eco Mode.....158

Load Carrying

General Information.....160
Luggage Anchor Points.....160
Rear Under Floor Storage.....161
Luggage Covers.....162
Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....162

Towing

Towing a Trailer.....163
Trailer Sway Control.....163
Recommended Towing Weights.....164
Essential Towing Checks.....165
Towing Points.....167
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels.....167

Driving Hints

Breaking-In.....169
Cold Weather Precautions.....169
Driving Through Water.....169
Floor Mats.....169

Roadside Emergencies

Hazard Flashers.....171
First Aid Kit.....171
Warning Triangle.....171
Fuel Shutoff.....171
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....172

Fuses

Fuse Box Locations.....174
Fuse Specification Chart.....175
Changing a Fuse.....184

Maintenance

General Information.....186
Opening and Closing the Hood.....186
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....188
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel.....189

Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....190
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....191
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel.....191
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....191
Engine Oil Check.....191
Engine Coolant Check.....192
Brake Fluid Check.....193
Washer Fluid Check.....193
Changing the 12V Battery.....194
Checking the Wiper Blades.....195
Changing the Wiper Blades.....195
Removing a Headlamp.....196
Changing a Bulb.....196
Bulb Specification Chart.....202

Vehicle Care
Cleaning the Exterior.....204
Cleaning the Interior.....204
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....205
Cleaning the Wheels.....205

Wheels and Tires
General Information.....206
Tire Care.....206
Using Snow Chains.....206
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....207
Changing a Road Wheel.....211
Technical Specifications.....218

Capacities and Specifications
Vehicle Identification Plate.....219
Vehicle Identification Number.....220

Audio System
General Information.....221
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Premium AM/FM/CD.....222
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.....223
Digital Radio.....225
Audio Input Jack.....226
USB Port.....227
Media Hub.....228
Audio Troubleshooting.....228

SYNC™ 2
General Information.....229
Settings.....238
Entertainment.....248
Phone.....259
Information.....270
Climate.....271
Navigation.....275
SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....286

Navigation
Navigation.....291

Appendices
Electromagnetic Compatibility.....300
End User License Agreement.....301

ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

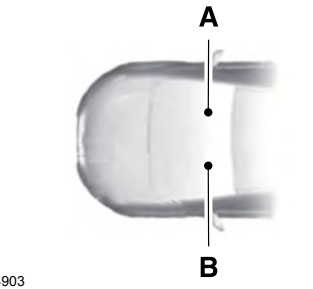
Note: *This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.*

Note: *Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle.*

Note: *Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.*

Note: *Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.*

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



E154903

A Right-hand side.

B Left-hand side.

SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.


Safety alert


See Owner's Manual


Air conditioning system



Anti-lock braking system


Avoid smoking, flames or sparks


Battery


Battery acid


Brake fluid - non petroleum based


Brake system


Cabin air filter


Check fuel cap


Child safety door lock or unlock


Child seat lower anchor


Child seat tether anchor


Cruise control


Do not open when hot


Electronic power steering malfunction


Engine air filter


Engine coolant


Engine coolant temperature


Engine oil


Explosive gas


Fan warning


Fasten seatbelt


Front airbag


Front fog lamps


Fuel pump reset


Fuse compartment


Hazard warning flashers


Heated rear window



Heated windshield

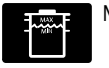

Interior luggage compartment release


Jack


Keep out of reach of children


Lighting control


Low tire pressure warning


Maintain correct fluid level


Note operating instructions


Panic alarm


Parking aid


Parking brake


Power steering fluid


Power windows front/rear


Power window lockout


Service engine soon


Side airbag


Shield the eyes


Stability control


Windshield wash and wipe

REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

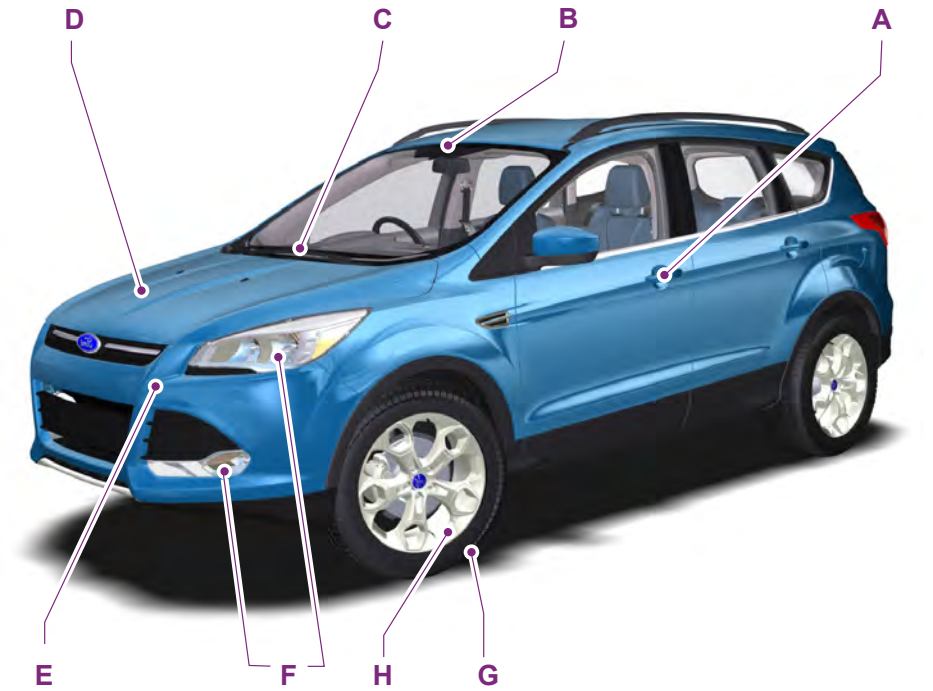
MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

Front Exterior Overview



E162996

A See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 30). See **Keyless Entry** (page 35).

B See **Automatic High Beam Control** (page 47). See **Driver Alert** (page 151). See **Lane Keeping System** (page 152). See **Active City Stop** (page 157).

C See **Changing the Wiper Blades** (page 195).

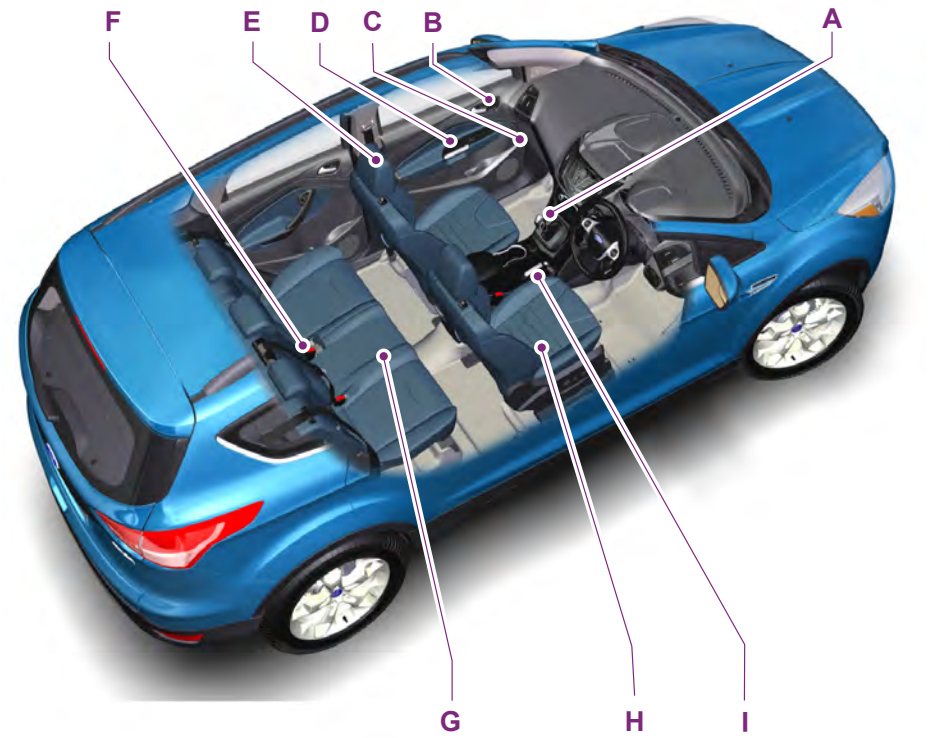
D See **Maintenance** (page 186).

E See **Towing Points** (page 167).

F See **Changing a Bulb** (page 196).

G Tire pressures. See **Technical Specifications** (page 218).
H See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 211).

Vehicle Interior Overview



E162998

A See **Transmission** (page 118).
B See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 30).
C See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 186).
D See **Power Windows** (page 53). See **Exterior Mirrors** (page 55).
E See **Head Restraints** (page 94).

F See **Fastening the Seatbelts** (page 21).
G See **Rear Seats** (page 98).
H See **Manual Seats** (page 95). See **Power Seats** (page 96).
I See **Parking Brake** (page 130).

Instrument Panel Overview



E234847

A Air vents. See **Air Vents** (page 85).
B Wiper lever. See **Wipers and Washers** (page 42). or Lane keeping system. See **Lane Keeping System** (page 152). Direction indicators. See **Direction Indicators** (page 50). High beam. See **Lighting Control** (page 45).
C Instrument cluster. See **Gauges** (page 60). See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 61).
D Direction indicators. See **Direction Indicators** (page 50). High beam. See **Lighting Control** (page 45). or Wiper lever. See **Wipers and Washers** (page 42).
E Information and entertainment display. See **Entertainment** (page 248).

F Audio unit. See **Audio System** (page 221). See **General Information** (page 229).

G Hazard warning flasher switch. See **Hazard Flashers** (page 171).

H Parking aid switch. See **Parking Aids** (page 133).

I Active park assist switch. See **Active Park Assist** (page 135).

J Start-stop switch. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 110).

K Heated rear window switch. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 91).

L Heated windshield switch. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 91).

M Climate controls. See **Climate Control** (page 85).

N Start button. See **Keyless Starting** (page 104).

O Audio control. See **Audio Control** (page 39). Telephone control. See **Phone** (page 259).

P Steering wheel adjustment. See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 39).

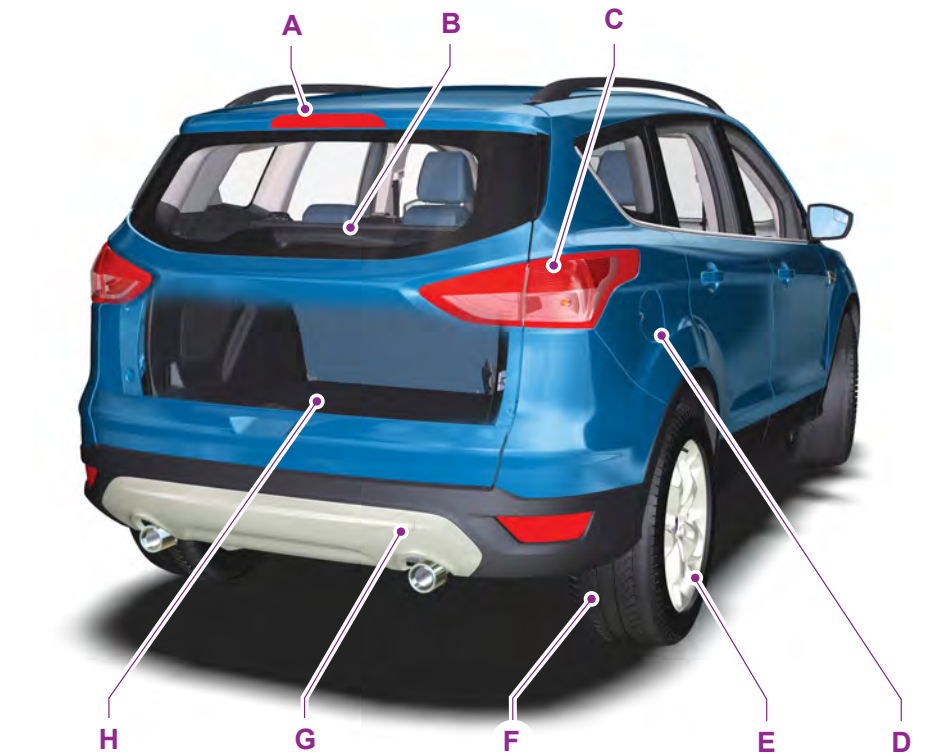
Q Horn.

R Cruise control switches. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 141). Adaptive cruise control (ACC) switches. See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 142).

S Information display controls. See **Information Displays** (page 66).

T Lighting control. See **Lighting Control** (page 45). Front fog lamps. See **Front Fog Lamps** (page 48). Rear fog lamp. See **Rear Fog Lamps** (page 48). Headlamp levelling control. See **Headlamp Leveling** (page 49). Instrument lighting dimmer. See **Principle of Operation** (page 85).

Rear Exterior Overview



E152446

A See **Changing a Bulb** (page 196).
B See **Changing the Wiper Blades** (page 195).
C See **Changing a Bulb** (page 196).
D See **Refueling** (page 115).
E See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 211).
F Tire pressures. See **Technical Specifications** (page 218).

G See **Towing Points** (page 167).

H See **First Aid Kit** (page 171). See **Warning Triangle** (page 171). Spare wheel, jack and wheel brace. See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 211). Towing eye. See **Towing Points** (page 167). Fuel funnel. See **Running Out of Fuel** (page 114).

CHILD RESTRAINTS

WARNINGS

Children must always be properly restrained.

This section provides useful information on the installation and safe use of child restraints. Ford strongly recommends that you read and understand this section before carrying children in your vehicle.

It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the children are seated in suitable child restraints prescribed by the laws of the State or Territory in which the vehicle is operated.

If you are in any doubt about the laws that apply in your location, please consult your local Authorised Ford Dealer or Local Approved Child Restraint Fitting Station for assistance.

WARNING

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.



E212161

WARNINGS

Seatbelts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather, they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.

Read and follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a child restraint.

Do not alter or modify child restraints in any way.

Do not hold a child on your lap when the vehicle is moving.

Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle.

On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

Destroy the child restraint if it has been in a severe crash, even if no damage is visible.

SELECTING A CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM

To provide protection, a child restraint system should meet three requirements.

1. **The child restraint system complies with Australian Standard AS1754.** Infants and children must be properly restrained at all times in an approved child restraint which conforms to Australian Standards AS1754 - 2004 or later. Look for the Australian Standard Approval Mark on the child restraint.
2. **The child restraint must be suitable for the size and weight of the child and must be properly fitted and adjusted.** Use the child restraint exactly as shown in the instructions provided with the child restraint. If you have any doubts, contact the child restraint manufacturer or consult an approved Restraint Fitting Station.
3. **The child restraint system should fit the vehicle seating position (or positions) where it will be used.** Due to variations in the design of child restraint systems, vehicle seats and seatbelts, all child restraint systems may not fit all seating positions. Before purchasing a child restraint system, it is recommended that the child restraint system is tested in the specific vehicle seating position (or positions) where it is intended to be used. If a previously purchased child restraint does not fit, you may need to purchase a different one that will fit.

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS

WARNINGS

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

Incorrectly fitted child restraints may swing, tip or come away causing death or injury.

Do not use a child restraint if the tether strap falls into a split in the vehicle seat back or falls off the edge of the vehicle seat.

After installing a child restraint system, push and pull the system forward and back and from side to side to verify that it is secured.

Be sure to read and follow the instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer. If you have any doubts contact the child restraint manufacturer or consult an approved Restraint Fitting Station. Your automobile club or local vehicle registration authority can provide location details of fitting stations.

When installing the child restraint attaching clip to the anchor fitting, raise the head restraint (where fitted) and pass the tether strap between the head restraint supports. This will prevent the tether strap from falling off the outboard edge of the seating positions.


E166723

Note: *Side curtain air bags (where fitted) will not interfere with a properly installed child restraint system or booster seat, because they are designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window openings.*

When a child restraint system is not being used, either remove it and store it in a safe place, or make sure it is properly secured. An unsecured child restraint system can be thrown around the vehicle in a collision or sudden stop and injure someone.

CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHORAGE LOCATIONS

Upper (top tether) anchorages

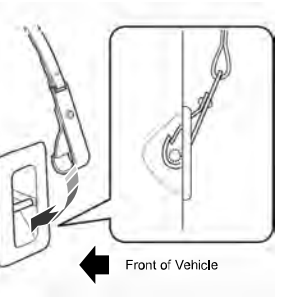
WARNING

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seatbelts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

There are three child restraint top tether anchorages, one for each rear seating position.

The top tether anchorages are only suitable for child restraints conforming to Australian Standard AS1754-2004 or later.


E166782



E220530

If your child restraint does not have an approved latched hook attaching clip as shown, you should consult an approved restraint fitting station.

Note: *You may need to raise or remove the head restraint to ease installation. See* ***Head Restraints*** *(page 94).*

Note: *Where applicable, remove the luggage cover to ease installation. See* ***Luggage Covers*** *(page 162).*

WARNINGS

Always ensure that the attaching clip is properly engaged with the anchor fitting and the tether strap length is adjusted to remove any slack.

WARNINGS

Always ensure that the locking mechanism of the rear seatback is fully engaged when in the upright position, by attempting to pull it down again.

Do not attach a tether strap to anything other than the correct tether anchor point.

Make sure that the seatback is secure and fully engaged in the catch.

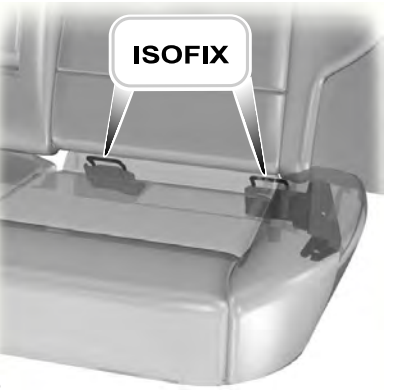
Make sure that the tether strap tightening mechanism remains accessible when the seatback is fully engaged in the catch.

ISOFIX LOWER ANCHORAGES (If Equipped)

WARNING

The ISOFIX lower anchorages must be used in conjunction with the upper (top tether) anchorages.

Your vehicle has ISOFIX lower anchorages located on the outboard rear seats, where the cushion and backrest meet.



E87145

PROTECTING LARGER CHILDREN

The rear seats (where provided) are the safest place for children.

When a child outgrows the recommended weight or height limits for a forward facing child restraint system, the child should sit on a booster seat and wear a lap-sash seatbelt. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the centre of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across its hips. A booster seat should be used until the child is tall enough for the lap-sash seatbelt to fit properly.

Typical Booster Seat



E70710

WARNINGS

Do not install a booster seat with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.

Do not install a booster seat with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.

CHECKING SEATBELT FIT

If the lap-sash seatbelt touches or crosses the child's neck, then the child needs a booster seat.

WARNINGS

Never wear a seatbelt across the neck. This could result in serious neck injury in the event of a collision.

Do not put the seatbelt under your child's arm or behind its back.

Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height.

Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

Manual Child Safety Locks

WARNING

You cannot open the doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.



E112197

The childproof locks are located on the rear edge of each rear door and must be set separately for each door.

Note: *On vehicles with keyless entry, use the spare key. See* ***Keyless Entry*** *(page 35).*

Left-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock and clockwise to unlock.

Right-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock and counterclockwise to unlock.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

The wearing of a seatbelt is a mandatory requirement. Seatbelts should be properly fastened and adjusted before the vehicle is driven. Adjust the driver's seat position before fastening the seatbelt.

Seatbelts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable. Wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt properly, can it hold you in position to achieve its optimum effect.

See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 93).

WARNINGS

Never use a seatbelt for more than one person. It is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

Use the correct buckle for each seatbelt.

Do not use a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.

Do not wear thick clothing. The seatbelt must fit tightly around your body to achieve its optimum effect.

Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the centre of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

WARNINGS

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if the webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seatbelt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seatbelt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

Seatbelts are designed to be used by adult sized occupants.

The driver and front passenger seatbelt systems are fitted with a seatbelt pretensioner. Seatbelt pretensioners have a lower deployment threshold than the airbags. During minor collisions, it is possible that only the seatbelt pretensioners will deploy.

Status after a collision

WARNINGS

Seatbelts subjected to strain, as a result of an accident, should be renewed and the anchorages checked by a properly trained technician.

If a seatbelt pretensioner has been deployed, the seatbelt must be renewed.

The seatbelt pretensioners at the front seating positions are designed to tighten the seatbelts when activated. In frontal and near-frontal crashes, the seatbelt pretensioners may be activated alone or, if the crash is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags. The pretensioners may also activate when a side curtain airbag is deployed.

FASTENING THE SEATBELTS

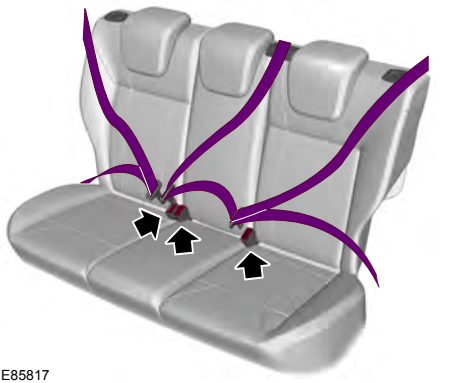
WARNINGS

Insert the tongue into the buckle until you hear a distinct click. You have not fastened the seatbelt correctly if you do not hear a click.

Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stored away when not in use and are not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.



E74124



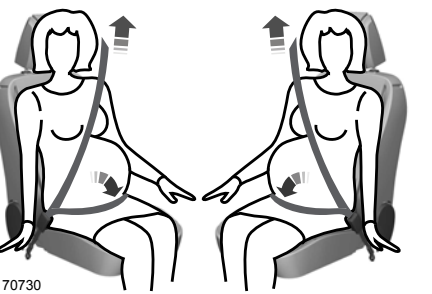
E85817

Pull the seatbelt out steadily. It may lock if you pull it sharply or if your vehicle is on a slope.

The rear outer seatbelts can lock if you return the seat backrest from a folded position to the upright position forcefully. Should the seatbelt lock, feed a small length of webbing back toward the stowed position.

Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt. Hold the tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy



E170730

WARNING

Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.

Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

SEATBELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

WARNING

Position the seatbelt height adjusters so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury in a crash.



E219555

To adjust the seatbelt height, squeeze the button and slide the seatbelt height adjuster up or down. Release the button and pull down on the seatbelt height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

SEATBELT REMINDER

WARNINGS

The system will only provide protection when you use the seatbelt correctly.

If multiple seatbelts are unfastened within a few seconds of each other, only one audible chime will sound.

The warning lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound when the following conditions have been met:

- The front seatbelts have not been fastened, and
- Your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

It will also illuminate and sound if a front seatbelt is unfastened when your vehicle is moving.

If you do not fasten your seatbelt the warning switches off automatically after approximately five minutes.

Rear Seatbelt Reminder

Note: *Press **OK** on the steering wheel control to confirm the message.*

The following status updates will be shown in the display:

- Tick symbol: Fastened seatbelt.
- Exclamation mark: A seatbelt that has been unfastened when your vehicle is moving. You will also hear an audible chime.

Switching the Seatbelt Reminder Off

See an authorized dealer.

SEATBELT MAINTENANCE

Inspect the vehicle seatbelts periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle seatbelts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All vehicle seatbelt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front seatbelt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seat back (if equipped), should be inspected after a crash.

Ford Motor Company recommends that all seatbelt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a crash be replaced. However, if the crash was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Seatbelt assemblies not in use during a crash should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

Properly care for seatbelts. See **Vehicle Care** (page 204).

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

Do not fit a non-Ford approved bull bar to your vehicle as this may interfere with the operation of the restraint system, including the air bag deployment, and could result in injury to yourself and others. Fitment of a bull bar may also void the vehicle's compliance with Australian Design Rules.

Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not fit any accessories on the front of the vehicle within 150 mm of the centre line of the vehicle as this may interfere with the operation of the front crash sensor.

Normal air flow to the radiator must not be affected when fog lamps, driving lamps or similiar equipment is fitted to the vehicle. Serious mechanical damage will occur.

Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 93). Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNINGS

Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. In the event of a crash, hard objects could cause serious personal injury or death.

Do not puncture the seat with sharp objects. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Use seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Note: *You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

Note: *Only wipe airbag covers with a damp cloth.*

DRIVER AIRBAG



E74302

The airbag will deploy during significant frontal collisions. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupant, thus cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal collisions, overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the airbag will not deploy.

PASSENGER AIRBAG



E151127

The passenger airbag will deploy during significant frontal or near-frontal collisions. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupant, thus cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal collisions, overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the front passenger airbag will not deploy.

SIDE AIRBAGS

WARNINGS

Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

WARNINGS

Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.

Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the seat airbag supplemental restraint systems, its fuses or the seat cover on a vehicle containing seat airbags as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

If the side airbag has deployed, the airbag will not function again. The side airbag system (including the seat) must be inspected as soon as possible. If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a crash.



E72658

The side airbags are on the outermost side of each front seat backrest. There is a label attached to the side of each backrest to indicate this.



E152533

The side airbags are designed to inflate between the door panel and the occupant to enhance the protection in certain crashes.

The airbag deploys during significant lateral crashes. It might also deploy during significant frontal crashes. The airbag does not deploy in minor lateral and frontal crashes, rear crashes, or overturns.

DRIVER KNEE AIRBAG

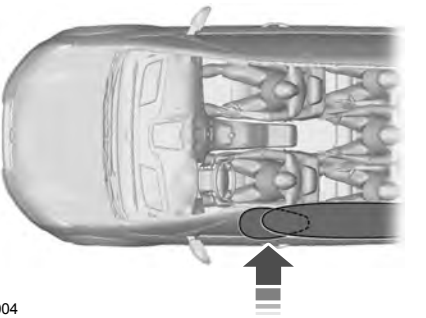
WARNING

Do not attempt to open the airbag cover.

The airbag will deploy during frontal collisions or collisions that are up to 30° from the left or the right. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupants, thus providing a cushion between the driver's knees and the steering column. During overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the knee airbag will not deploy.

Note: *The airbag has a lower deployment threshold than the front airbags. During a minor collision, it is possible that only the knee airbag will deploy.*

SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS



E75004

The airbags are located over the front and rear side windows.

The airbag will deploy during significant lateral collisions. It will also deploy during significant frontal angled collisions. The curtain airbag will not deploy in minor lateral and frontal collisions, rear collisions, or overturns.

GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

Note: *Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 10 m.

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around your vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other radio transmitters, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, wireless remote controls, cell phones, battery chargers and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: *Make sure your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.*

Note: *If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.*

Note: *The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.*

REMOTE CONTROL

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

Note: *When you press the unlock button either all the doors are unlocked or only the driver's door and the liftgate are unlocked. Pressing the unlock button again unlocks all the doors.*

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators will flash twice to confirm the change.

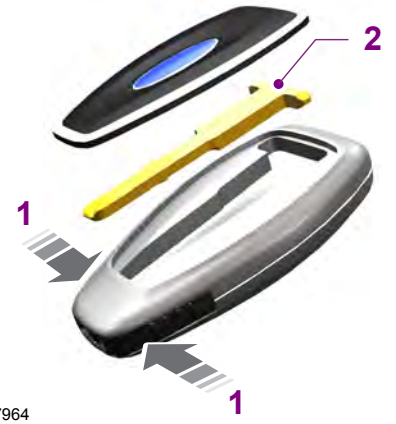
To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

Changing the Remote Control Battery



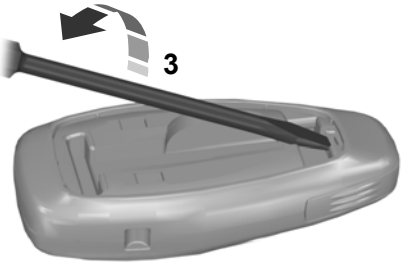
Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority regarding recycling.

Remote Control without a Folding Key Blade



E87964

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade.



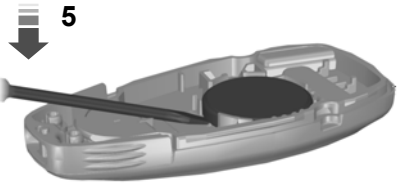
E105362

3. Twist the screwdriver in the position shown to start separating the two halves of the remote control.



E119190

4. Twist the screwdriver in the position shown to separate the two halves of the remote control.



E125860

Note: *Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.*

5. Carefully prise out the battery with the screwdriver.
6. Install a new battery (3V CR 2032) with the + facing downwards.
7. Assemble the two halves of the remote control.
8. Install the key blade.

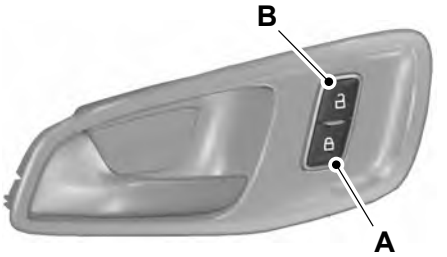
REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

Replacement keys or remote controls can be purchased from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 38).

LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

Power Door Locks

The power door lock control is located on the driver's and front passenger's door.



E148829

A Lock
B Unlock

Remote Control

You can use the remote control from outside your vehicle when your vehicle is not running.

Unlocking the Doors

Press the button to unlock the driver's door. The direction indicators will flash once.

Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors. The direction indicators will flash once.

Note: *You can unlock the driver's door with the key. Use the key when the remote control is not functioning.*

Note: *When you lock your vehicle for several weeks, the remote control will be switched off. Your vehicle must be unlocked and the engine started using the key. Unlocking and starting your vehicle once will enable the remote control.*

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function in keyless vehicles

You can reprogram the unlocking function so that only the driver's door is unlocked. See **Remote Control** (page 27).

Locking the Doors

Press the button to lock all the doors. The direction indicators will illuminate.

Press the button again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed. The doors will lock again, and the direction indicators will flash if all the doors and the luggage compartment are closed.

Note: *If any door or the luggage compartment is not closed, or if the hood is not closed on vehicles that have an anti-theft alarm or remote start, the direction indicators will not flash.*

Double Locking

WARNING

Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside. You can only double lock the doors if they are all closed.

Press the button twice within three seconds.

Automatic Relocking

The doors will relock automatically if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The door locks and the alarm will return to their previous state.

Power Liftgate

WARNINGS

Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.

Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Press twice within three seconds to open or close the liftgate, or to reverse the movement. See **Power Liftgate** (page 33).

Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

Locking and Unlocking the Doors from Inside

Use the lock and unlock buttons located on the driver's and front passenger's door.

Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key

Note: *Do not leave your keys in your vehicle.*

Locking with the Key

Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle.

Double Locking with the Key

Turn the key to the lock position twice within three seconds.

Unlocking

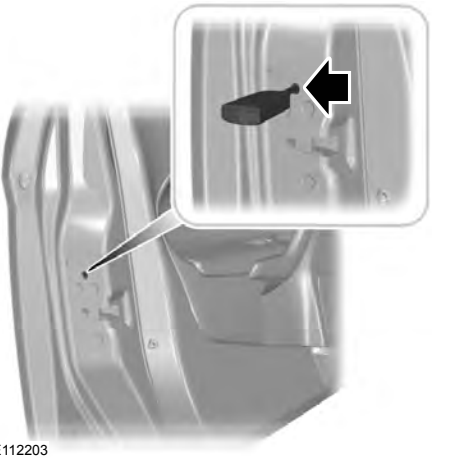
Unlock the driver's door using the key. You can unlock all other doors individually by pulling the interior door handles.

Note: *If the child safety locks are on and you pull the interior handle, you will only turn off the emergency locking, not the child safety lock. You can only open the doors using the external door handle.*

Note: *If the doors have been unlocked using this method, the doors must be locked individually until the central locking function has been repaired.*

Locking the Doors Individually with the Key

Note: *When the central locking function fails to operate, lock the doors individually using the key in the position shown.*



E112203

Left-hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock.

Right-hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock.

MANUAL LIFTGATE

WARNINGS

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seatbelt properly. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

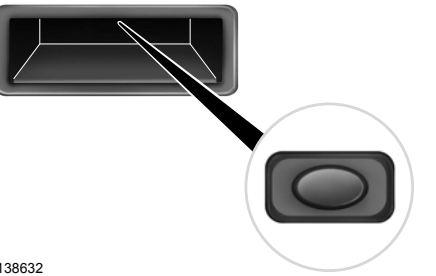
Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

Note: *Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Opening the Liftgate

Manually



E138632

Press the button located in the top of the liftgate pull cup handle to unlatch the liftgate, and then pull on the outside handle.

With the Remote Control



Press the button twice within three seconds.

Closing the Liftgate



E155976

A handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

POWER LIFTGATE (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Keep keys out of reach of children. Do not allow children to operate or play near an open or moving power liftgate. You should supervise the operation of the power liftgate at all times.

You can operate the liftgate using the remote control, the center console switch, the liftgate switch, the liftgate release handle or the hands-free feature.

Note: *Make sure there is enough headroom to open the liftgate.*

Note: *If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, make sure the transmission selector lever is in park.*

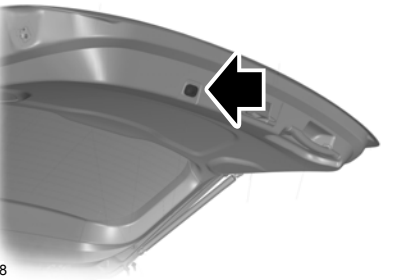
Note: *In extreme weather conditions, automatic opening and closing will not work with the liftgate frozen to the seal.*

Note: *The liftgate will stop automatically while opening and reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.*

Note: *The liftgate will stop automatically while closing and fully open if there is an obstacle in the way.*

Note: *You can manually operate the liftgate.*

Liftgate switch



E129838



Centre Console Switch.

You will hear three chimes when the liftgate begins to close.

Five short chimes indicate a malfunction with the open or close request. This could be caused by one of the following:

- You switch the ignition on and the transmission selector lever is not in park.
- The battery voltage is below the minimum operating voltage.
- Your vehicle speed exceeds 5 km/h.

To open a fully closed liftgate, you can either:

- Press the button on the remote control twice within three seconds.
- Press the center console switch.
- Use the liftgate release handle.
- Use the hands-free feature.

To fully open a partially opened liftgate, you can either:

- Press the button on the remote control twice within three seconds.
- Press the center console switch or the liftgate switch.
- Use the liftgate release handle.
- Use the hands-free feature.

To stop the liftgate, you can either:

- Press the button on the remote control. A further remote control operation will be delayed for approximately three seconds.
- Press the center console switch or the liftgate switch.
- Use the liftgate release handle.
- Use the hands-free feature.

Closing the Liftgate

WARNING

Keep clear of the liftgate when using the rear switch.

Note: *Do not leave a passive key in your vehicle when closing the liftgate. A message will be shown in the display. See* ***Information Messages*** *(page 72).*

Note: *A recessed grip is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.*

You can either:

- Press the button on the remote control twice within three seconds.
- Press the center console switch or the liftgate switch.
- Use the liftgate release handle.
- Use the hands-free feature.
- Manually close the liftgate



E130232

The liftgate will close automatically when it comes into contact with the vehicle body.

Programming the Liftgate

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Manually move the liftgate to the new required position.
3. Press and hold the liftgate switch for at least three seconds. You will hear a chime.

Hands-Free Feature

Note: *This feature will not function if your vehicle is fitted with a towbar.*

Note: *Make sure you have a remote control within 1 m of the liftgate.*

1. Move your foot under and away from the rear bumper similar to a kicking motion.



E161602

2. The liftgate will power open or close.

Note: *Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may enable the bounce-back feature and stop the liftgate from opening or closing.*

Note: *Splashing water may cause the liftgate to open. Keep the remote control away from the rear bumper detection area when washing your vehicle.*

KEYLESS ENTRY (If Equipped)

General information

WARNING

The keyless entry system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as mobile phones.

The passive entry system will not function if:

- The vehicle battery is flat.
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The passive key battery is flat.

Note: *If the passive entry system does not function, you will need to use the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.*

The keyless system allows the driver to operate the vehicle without the use of a key or remote control.



E78276

Passive locking and unlocking requires a valid passive key to be located within one of the three external detection ranges. These are located approximately one and a half meters from the driver and front passenger door handles and the luggage compartment lid.

Passive key

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked with the passive key. The passive key can also be used as a remote control. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 30).

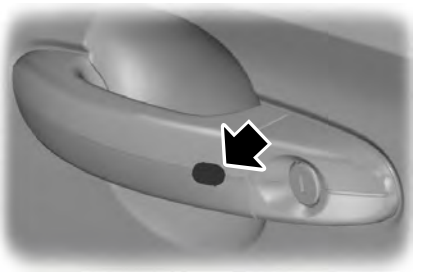
Locking the vehicle

WARNING

The vehicle does not lock itself automatically. If the locking function is not activated, the vehicle will remain unlocked.

Note: *The ignition will automatically switch off when you lock your vehicle from the outside. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging.*

Note: *Do not grab the door handle while you touch the lock sensor.*



E144112

Touch a front door handle lock sensor to lock the vehicle.

To activate central locking and arm the alarm:

- Touch a front door handle lock sensor once.

To activate double locking and arm the alarm:

- Touch a front door handle lock sensor twice within three seconds.

Note: *There must be clearance between each touch of the door handle.*

Note: *Once activated, the vehicle will remain locked for approximately three seconds. When the delay period is over, the doors can be opened again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.*

Two short flashes of the direction indicators confirms that all the doors and the luggage compartment lid have been locked and that the alarm has been armed.

Luggage compartment lid

Note: *The luggage compartment lid cannot be closed and, will pop back up if the passive key is located inside the vehicle with the doors locked.*

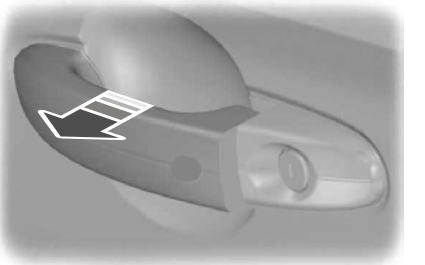
Note: *If a second valid passive key is located within the rear exterior detection range, the luggage compartment lid can be closed.*

Unlocking the vehicle

Note: *If the vehicle remains locked for longer than three days, the keyless system will enter an energy-saving mode. This is to reduce the discharge of the vehicle battery. When the vehicle is unlocked while in this mode, the reaction time of the system may be a little longer than normal. Unlocking the vehicle once will deactivate the energy-saving mode.*

Note: *If the vehicle remains locked for several weeks, the keyless system will be disabled. The vehicle must be unlocked using the key blade. Unlocking the vehicle once will enable the keyless system.*

Note: *Do not touch the front door handle lock sensor when opening a door.*



E144113

Open any door.

Note: *A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door.*

One long flash of the direction indicators confirms that all the doors and the luggage compartment lid have been unlocked and that the alarm has been disarmed.

Unlocking only the driver's door

If the unlocking function is reprogrammed so that only the driver's door and the luggage compartment lid are unlocked (See **Remote Control** (page 27).), note the following:

If the driver's door is the first door which is opened, the other doors will remain locked. All the other doors can be unlocked from inside the vehicle by pressing the unlock button on the instrument panel. For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 9). Doors can be unlocked individually by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.

Disabled keys

Any keys left inside the vehicle interior when it is locked will be disabled.

A disabled key cannot be used to turn the ignition on or start the engine.

In order to use these passive keys again, they have to be enabled.

To enable all your passive keys, unlock the vehicle using a passive key or the remote control unlocking function.

All passive keys will then be enabled if the ignition is turned on or the vehicle is started using a valid key.

Locking and unlocking the doors with the key blade



E87964

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade and insert it into the lock.

Note: *Only the driver's door handle is fitted with a lock cylinder.*

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

Principle of Operation

The system prevents someone from starting the engine with an incorrectly coded key.

Coded Keys

If you lose a key, you can purchase a replacement from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original keys. You can also obtain extra keys from an authorized dealer.

Note: *Have all of your remaining keys erased and recoded if you lose a key. Have replacement keys coded together with recoding your remaining keys. See an authorized dealer for further information.*

Note: *Do not shield your keys with metal objects. This may prevent the receiver from recognizing a coded key.*

Arming the Engine Immobilizer

When you switch the ignition off the engine immobilizer will arm automatically after a short time.

Disarming the Engine Immobilizer

When you switch the ignition on the engine immobilizer will disarm automatically if a correctly coded key is used.

If you are unable to start the engine with a correctly coded key, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM (If Equipped)

The system will warn you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle. It will be triggered if any door, the luggage compartment or the hood is opened without using the key, remote control or keyless entry keypad.

The direction indicators will flash and the horn will sound if unauthorized entry is attempted while the alarm is armed.

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

Arming the Alarm

The alarm is ready to arm when there is not a key in the ignition. Electronically lock the vehicle to arm the alarm.



The message indicator flashes when theft protection is active.

Disarming the Alarm

Disarm the alarm by any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control or keyless entry keypad.
- Switch the ignition on or start the vehicle.
- Use a key in the driver's door to unlock the vehicle, then switch the ignition on within 12 seconds.

Note: *Pressing the panic button on the remote control will stop the horn and signal indicators, but will not disarm the system.*

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

WARNING

Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See* ***Sitting in the Correct Position*** *(page 93).*



E95178

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



E95179

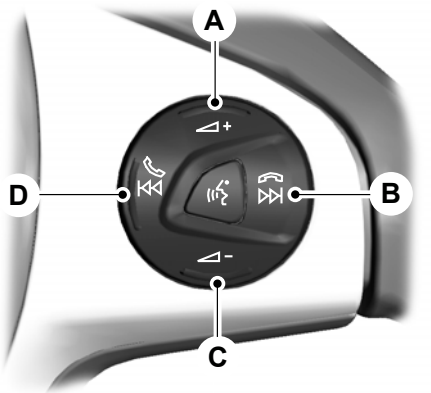
3. Lock the steering column.

AUDIO CONTROL

Select the required source on the audio unit.

You can operate the following functions with the control:

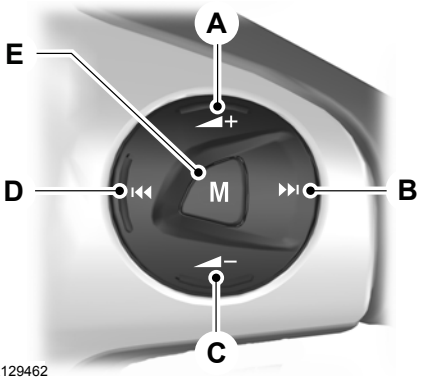
Type 1



E159789

A	Volume up
B	Seek up, next or end call
C	Volume down
D	Seek down, previous or accept call

Type 2



E129462

A	Volume up
B	Seek up or next
C	Volume down
D	Seek down or previous
E	Mode

Press **M** to select the audio source.

Seek, Next or Previous

Press the seek button to:

- tune the radio to the next or previous stored preset
- play the next or the previous track.

Press and hold the seek button to:

- tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band
- seek through a track.

VOICE CONTROL



E159531

Press the button to select or deselect voice control.

CRUISE CONTROL



E157482

See **Cruise Control** (page 141).

INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL



E130248

See **Information Displays** (page 66).

Multimedia Controls



E145434

Use the arrows on the right side of the steering wheel to navigate through the information display menus. Press **OK** to make a selection.

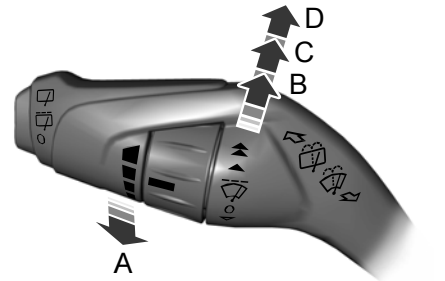
WINDSHIELD WIPERS

Note: *Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.*

Note: *Make sure you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.*

Note: *If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.*

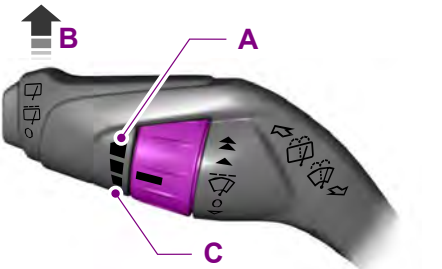
Note: *Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out.*



E166226

A Single wipe.
B Intermittent wipe.
C Normal wipe.
D High speed wipe.

Intermittent Wipe



E166227

A Short wipe interval.
B Intermittent wipe.
C Long wipe interval.

Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

Speed Dependent Wipers (If Equipped)

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between wipes decreases.

AUTOWIPERS (If Equipped)

Note: *Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.*

Note: *Make sure you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.*

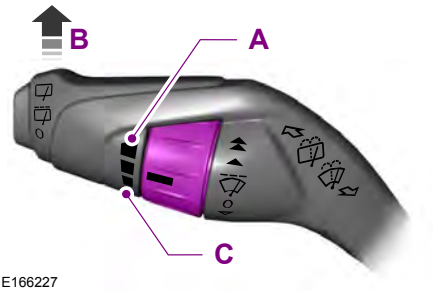
Note: *If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.*

Note: *If you switch autolamps and autowipers on, the headlamps will automatically turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.*

Wet or winter driving conditions with ice, snow or salty road mist can cause inconsistent and unexpected wiping or smearing.

To reduce smearing we recommend the following:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers.
- Switch to normal or high speed wipe.
- Switch the autowipers off.



E166227

A High sensitivity.

B On.

C Low sensitivity.

The wipers function when moisture is detected on the windshield. The rain sensor continues to monitor the amount of moisture on the windshield and adjust the speed of the wipers automatically.

You can adjust the sensitivity of the sensor using the rotary control.

With low sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a large amount of moisture on the windshield. With high sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a small amount of moisture on the windshield.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. Sensor performance will be affected if the area around the interior mirror is dirty. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

WINDSHIELD WASHERS

Note: *Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.*



E166256

Note: *A courtesy wipe occurs a few seconds after washing to clear any remaining washer fluid.*

The washers spray for as long as you pull the lever. When you release the lever, the wipers operate for a short time.

REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS

Rear Window Wiper

Note: *The lever arrangement is lateralized in the vehicles with Lane keeping system.*



E166230

A Intermittent wipe

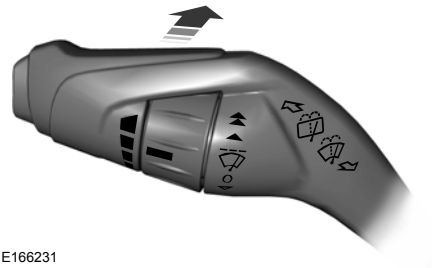
B Low speed wipe

Press the button at the end of the lever to change between off, intermittent and low speed.

When you shift into R (Reverse), the rear wiper will switch on to intermittent if the front wipers are activated.

Rear Window Washer

Note: *The lever arrangement is lateralized in the vehicles with Lane keeping system.*



E166231

The washer will spray for as long as you push the lever away from you. When you release the lever, the wiper will operate for a short time.

GENERAL INFORMATION

Condensation in the Exterior Front Lamps and Rear Lamps

Exterior front lamps and rear lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

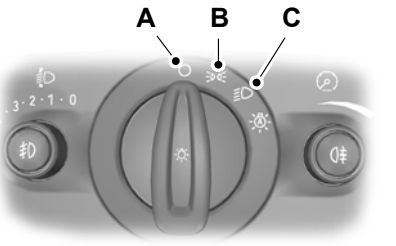
- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

LIGHTING CONTROL



E165741

A Off.

B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps.

C Headlamps.

High Beams



E166216

Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Headlamp Flasher



E166217

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

AUTOLAMPS



E70719

Note: *If you switch autolamps and autowipers on, the headlamps automatically turn on and the wipers continuously operate.*

Note: *You may have to switch the headlamps on manually in severe weather conditions.*

The headlamps automatically turn on and off in low light situations or during inclement weather.

The headlamps remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. You can adjust the time delay using the information display controls.

INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER

Note: *If you disconnect the battery or it becomes discharged, the illuminated components will switch to the maximum setting.*



E165826

Turn the switch clockwise or anticlockwise until the desired level is reached.

HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator toward you again or switching the ignition on.

DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS

WARNING

The autolamps switch position may not activate the headlamps in all low visibility conditions, such as daytime fog. Always ensure that your headlamps are switched to auto or on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

To switch the system on:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Switch the lighting control to the off or autolamp position.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL (If Equipped)

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to manually override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

The system automatically turns on high beams if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns off high beams before they can distract other road users. Low beams remain on.

Note: *The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction or damage.*

Note: *The system may not operate properly in cold or inclement conditions. You can switch on the high beams by manually overriding the system.*

Note: *If the system detects a blockage, for example bird droppings, bug splatter, snow or ice, the system goes into low beam mode until you clear the blockage. A message may appear in the information display if the camera is blocked.*

Note: *Using much larger tires or equipping vehicle accessories such as snowplows can modify your vehicle's ride height and degrade automatic high beam control performance.*

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.

Once the system is active, the high beams turn on if:

- The ambient light level is low enough.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h.

The high beams turn off if:

- The ambient light level is high enough that high beams are not required.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 25 km/h.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The camera is blocked.

Switching the System On and Off

Note: *The system may take a short time to turn on after switching the ignition on. The high beam does not automatically turn on during this time.*

Switch the system on using the information display.



E70719

Switch the lighting control to the autolamps position.

Note: *The indicator illuminates when it is dark, and you switch the headlamps on.*

Note: *The indicator illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.*



Setting the System Sensitivity

The system has three sensitivity levels that you can access using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 66).

The set level determines the speed at which the high beam restores after traffic leaves the field of view.

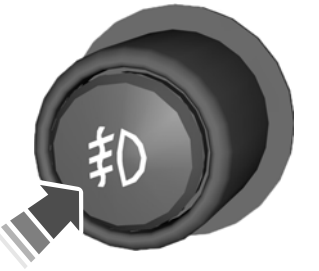
Manually Overriding the System

When you switch on the high beams, pushing or pulling the stalk provides a temporary override to low beam.

Note: *This is a temporary override and the system returns to automatic operation after a short time.*

To permanently switch the system off, use the information display or switch the lighting control to the headlamps position.

FRONT FOG LAMPS



E70721

Press the control to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can switch the fog lamps on when the lighting control is in any position except off.

REAR FOG LAMPS



E70720

WARNING

Do not use the rear fog lamps when it is raining or snowing and visibility is more than 50 m.

Press the control to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can switch the fog lamps on when either the front fog lamps or low beam headlamps are on.

HEADLAMP LEVELING

Note: *Vehicles with Xenon headlamps have automatic headlamp leveling.*



E165823

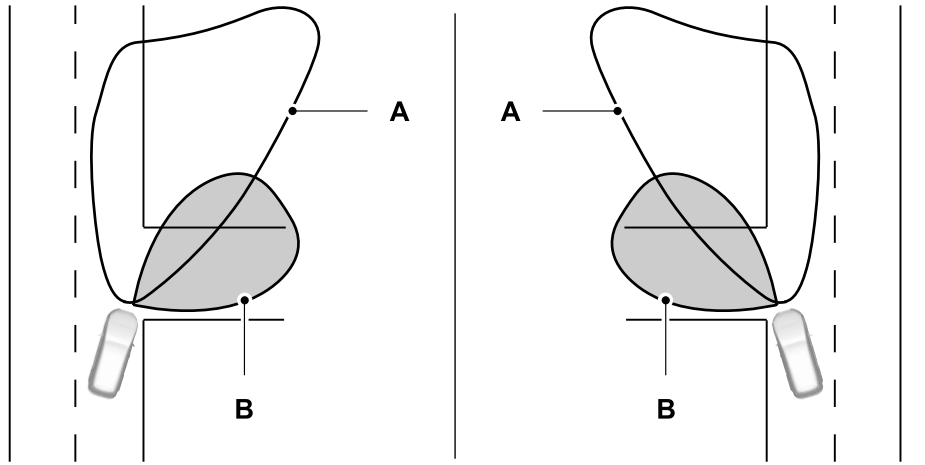
You can adjust the level of the headlamp beams according to your vehicle load.

Recommended Headlamp Leveling Switch Positions

Load		Load in luggage compartment*	Switch position
Front seats	Second row seats		
1-2	-	-	0
1-2	3	-	2
1-2	3	Max	2.5
1	-	Max	4

* See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 219).

CORNERING LAMPS (If Equipped)



E72898

A Headlamp beam
B Cornering lamp beam

The cornering lamps illuminate the inside of a corner when you are turning.

DIRECTION INDICATORS



E166224

Note: *Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times to indicate a lane change.*

Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

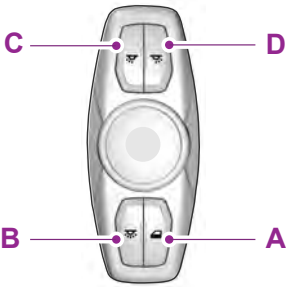
INTERIOR LAMPS

The lamps turn on under the following conditions:

- You open any door.
- You press a remote control button.
- You press switch B on the front interior lamp.

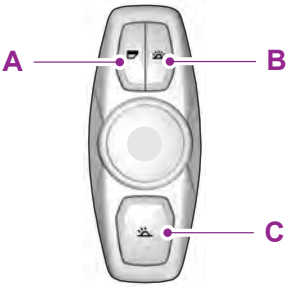
Front Interior Lamps

Without Moonroof



E161163

With Moonroof



E142454

A	Door function.
B	All lamps on and off.
C	Individual lamps.
D	Individual lamps.

Rear Map Lamps (If Equipped)



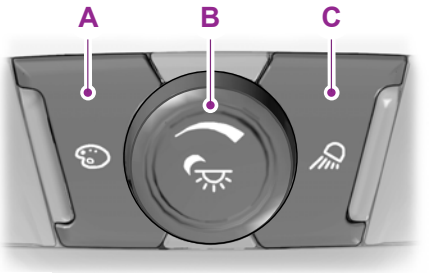
E142455

A	Map lamps.

Note: *You can switch individual map lamps on independently by pressing a map lens.*

AMBIENT LIGHTING (If Equipped)

The ambient lighting system illuminates the interior with a choice of several colors. The ambient lighting control is located in the overhead console.



E142456

A Color palette
B Control knob
C Search mode

Rotate B past the first detent to switch on and adjust to the desired brightness.

Press A to cycle through the color choices.

Press C to switch on all interior lamps and the ambient lighting. Press C again to switch off the interior lamps and return the ambient lighting to the previously selected color.

The ambient lighting will switch on when the following conditions have been met:

- you switch the ignition on
- you switch the headlamps on

The ambient lighting will remain on until you switch the ignition off and one of the following conditions have been met:

- you lock your vehicle
- the accessory delay timer expires.

POWER WINDOWS

WARNINGS

Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.

When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



E70848

Press the control to open the window.

Lift the control to close the window.

Note: *You may hear a pulsing noise when just one of the windows is open. Lower the opposite window slightly to reduce this noise.*

One-Touch Down (If Equipped)

Press the control fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Up (If Equipped)

Lift the control fully and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

Window Lock



E70850

Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It lights when the rear window controls lock.

Bounce-Back (If Equipped)

The window stops automatically while closing. It reverses some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature

WARNING

When you override the bounce-back feature the window will not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

Proceed as follows to override this protection feature when there is a resistance, for example in winter:

1. Close the window twice until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Close the window a third time to the point of resistance. You disabled the bounce-back feature and you can now close the window manually. The window travels past the point of resistance and you can close it fully.

Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible if the window does not close after the third attempt.

Resetting the Bounce-Back Feature

WARNING

The bounce-back feature remains turned off until you reset the memory.

If you have disconnected the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory separately for each window.

1. Lift and hold the control until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the control.
3. Lift and hold the control again for a few seconds.
4. Release the control.
5. Lift and hold the control again for a few seconds.
6. Release the control.
7. Press and hold the control until the window is fully open.
8. Lift and hold the control until the window is fully closed.
9. Release the control.
10. Open the window and then try to close it automatically.
11. Repeat the procedure if the window does not close automatically.

Accessory Delay (If Equipped)

You can use the window controls for several minutes after switching off the ignition or until opening either front door.

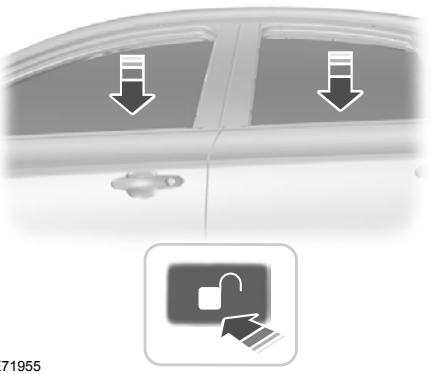
GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can also operate the power windows with the ignition off using the global opening and global closing function.

Note: *Global opening will only operate for a short period of time after you have unlocked your vehicle using the remote control.*

Note: *Global closing will only operate if you have set the memory correctly for each window. See* ***Power Windows*** *(page 53).*

Global Opening (If Equipped)



E71955

To open all the windows and vent the moonroof:

1. Press and release the remote control unlock button.
2. Press and hold the remote control unlock button for at least three seconds.

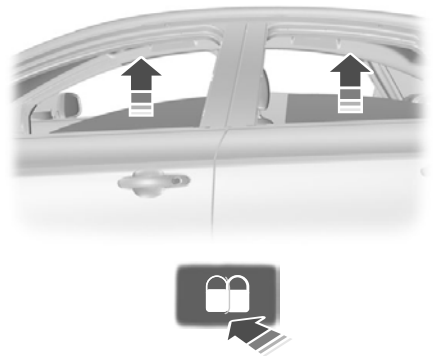
Press the lock or unlock button to stop the opening function.

Global Closing (If Equipped)

Vehicles Without Keyless Entry

WARNING

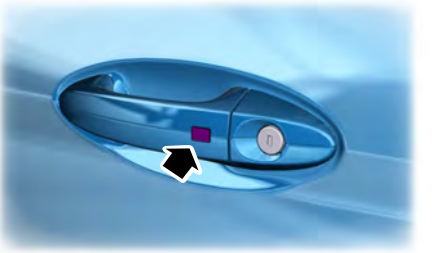
Take care when using global closing. Failure to follow this warning could seriously increase the risk of injury or death. In an emergency, press the lock or unlock button immediately to stop.



E71956

To close all the windows and the moonroof, press and hold the remote control lock button for at least three seconds. Press the lock or unlock button to stop the closing function. The bounce-back function is also on during global closing.

Vehicles With Keyless Entry



E87384

WARNING

Take care when using global closing. In an emergency, touch a door handle lock sensor to stop.

Note: *Global closing can be switched on using the driver's door handle. Global opening and closing can also be switched on using the buttons on the passive key.*

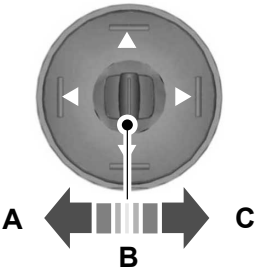
To close all the windows and the moonroof, press and hold the driver's door handle for at least three seconds. The bounce-back function is also on during global closing.

EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Power Exterior Mirrors

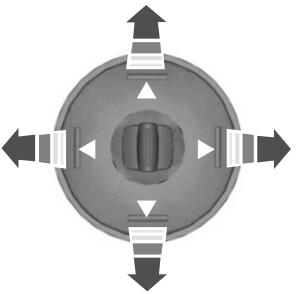
WARNING

Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving.



E70846

A Left-hand mirror
B Off
C Right-hand mirror



E70847

Press the arrows to adjust the mirror.

Automatic Folding and Unfolding

The mirrors will fold automatically when you lock your vehicle with the key, the remote control or a keyless entry system request. The mirrors will unfold when you unlock your vehicle with the key, the remote control, a keyless entry system request or the driver side interior door handle.

Note: *If you fold the mirrors using the manual fold button, you can only unfold them again manually.*

Manual Folding and Unfolding

The electric folding mirrors operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Note: *They will no longer operate if you switch the ignition off and open a door.*



E72623

Press the button to fold or unfold the mirrors.

Press the button again to stop and reverse the direction of movement.

Note: *Continuous folding and unfolding of the mirrors will cause them to overheat and shut down for a short time. This is to avoid permanent damage.*

Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

Heated Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)

See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 91).

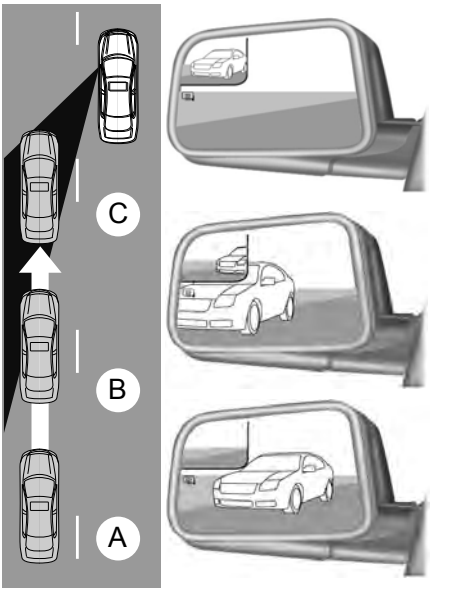
Integrated Blind Spot Mirrors (If Equipped)

WARNING

Objects in the blind spot mirror are closer than they appear.

Blind spot mirrors have an integrated convex mirror built into the upper outboard corner of the exterior mirrors. They are designed to increase your visibility along the side of your vehicle.

Check the main mirror first before a lane change, then check the blind spot mirror. If no vehicles are present in the blind spot mirror and the traffic in the adjacent lane is at a safe distance, signal that you intend to change lanes. Glance over your shoulder to verify traffic is clear and carefully change lanes.



E138665

The image of the approaching vehicle is small and near the inboard edge of the main mirror when it is at a distance. The image becomes larger and begins to move outboard across the main mirror as the vehicle approaches (A). The image will transition from the main mirror and begin to appear in the blind spot mirror as the vehicle approaches (B). The vehicle will transition to your peripheral field of view as it leaves the blind spot mirror (C).

Blind Spot Monitor (If Equipped)

See **Eco Mode** (page 158).

INTERIOR MIRROR

WARNING

Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Note: *Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.*

You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. Some mirrors also have a second pivot point. This lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

Auto-Dimming Mirror (If Equipped)

Note: *Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.*

The mirror dims to reduce glare when bright lights are detected from behind your vehicle. It will automatically return to normal reflection when you select reverse gear to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.

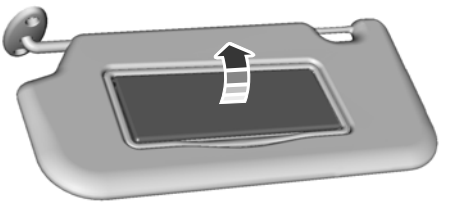
SUN VISORS



E138666

Rotate the sun visor toward the side window and extend it rearward for extra shade.

Illuminated Vanity Mirror (If Equipped)



E162197

Lift the cover to switch the lamp on.

MOONROOF (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

Do not let children play with the moonroof or leave them unattended in the vehicle. They may seriously hurt themselves.

WARNINGS

When closing the moonroof, you should verify that it is free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the roof opening.

The moonroof and sunscreen controls are located on the overhead console.

The moonroof and sunscreen have a one-touch open and close feature. To stop them during one-touch operation, press the control a second time.

Opening and Closing the Sunscreen

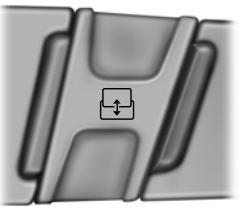


E138668

Press and release the rear of the control to open the sunscreen.

Press and release the front of the control to close the sunscreen. If it is open, the moonroof will automatically close before the sunscreen closes.

Opening and Closing the Moonroof



E138669

Press and release the rear of the control to open the moonroof. If it is closed, the sunscreen will automatically open before the moonroof opens. The moonroof will stop short of the fully opened position.

Note: *This position helps to reduce wind noise or rumbling which may happen with the moonroof fully open. Press and hold the control again to fully open the moonroof.*

Press and release the front of the control to close the moonroof.

Bounce-Back

The moonroof will stop automatically while closing. It will reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

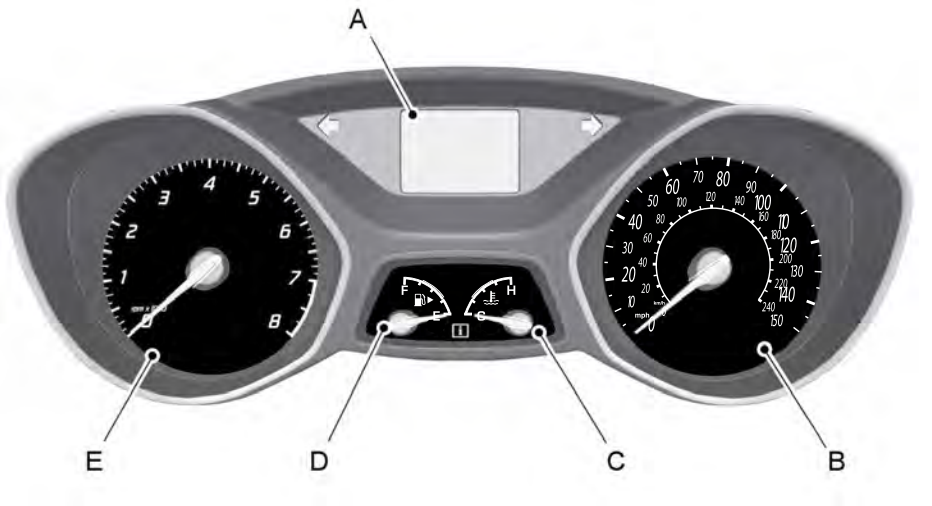
Press and hold the front of the control within two seconds of a bounce-back event to override this function. While bounce-back is active, the closing force increases for each of the next three times that you close the moonroof.

Venting the Moonroof

Press and release the front of the control to vent the moonroof. Press and release the rear of the control to close the moonroof.

Note: *When you vent the moonroof it will rise to 4 cm and then lower slightly. This is normal. You cannot stop the moonroof in the higher position.*

GAUGES



E145825

A Information display
B Speedometer
C Engine coolant temperature gauge
D Fuel gauge
E Tachometer

Information Display

Compass (If Equipped)

Displays the vehicle's heading direction.

Odometer

Located in the bottom of the information display, it registers the accumulated distance your vehicle has traveled.

Outside Air Temperature

Shows the outside air temperature.

Trip Computer

See **Trip Computer** (page 72).

Vehicle Settings and Personalization

See **General Information** (page 66).

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

WARNING

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is running or hot.

At normal operating temperature, the needle remains in the center section.

Note: *Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been resolved.*

If the needle enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the engine, switch the ignition off and determine the cause once the engine has cooled down. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 192).

Fuel Gauge

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge will indicate approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a gradient. The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of the vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

A low fuel reminder will be triggered when the fuel gauge needle is at 1/16th or vehicles equipped with a DTE (Drive To Empty) is at 60 km, whichever occurs first.

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators will alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps will illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

Note: *Some warning indicators appear in the information display and function the same as a warning lamp but do not display when you start your vehicle.*

Anti-Lock Braking System Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. You will continue to have the normal braking system (without anti-lock braking system) unless the brake system warning lamp is also illuminated. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Automatic High Beam Lamp (If Equipped)



It will illuminate when this feature is on. See **Automatic High Beam Control** (page 47).

Battery Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when driving, this indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

Blind Spot Monitor Indicator (If Equipped)



It will illuminate when you switch this feature off or in conjunction with a message. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 155). See **Information Messages** (page 72).

Brake System Warning Lamp



It will illuminate when you engage the parking brake with the ignition on.

If it illuminates when you are driving, check that the parking brake is not engaged. If the parking brake is not engaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

WARNING

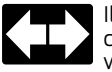
Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

Cruise Control Indicator (If Equipped)



It will illuminate when you switch this feature on. See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 142).

Direction Indicator



Illuminates when the left or right direction indicator or the hazard warning flasher is turned on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burnt out bulb. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 196).

Engine Oil Warning Lamp

WARNING

Do not resume your journey if it illuminates despite the level being correct. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.



If it illuminates with the engine running or when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 191).

Engine Warning Lamps



Malfunction Indicator Lamp



Powertrain Warning Lamp

All Vehicles

If either lamp illuminates when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. The engine will continue to run but it may have limited power. If it flashes when you are driving, reduce the speed of your vehicle immediately. If it continues to flash, avoid heavy acceleration or deceleration. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

WARNING

Have this checked immediately.

If both lamps illuminate together, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so (continued use may cause reduced power and cause the engine to stop). Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. If the engine restarts have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. When the engine does not restart have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp



It will illuminate and a chime will sound to remind you to fasten your seatbelt. See **Seatbelt Reminder** (page 22).

Front Airbag Warning Lamp



If it fails to illuminate when you start your vehicle, continues to flash or remains on, it indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Front Fog Lamps Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the front fog lamps on.

Frost warning lamp

WARNING

Even if the temperature rises to above 4ºC there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.



It will illuminate when the outside air temperature is 4ºC or below.

Glow Plug Indicator



See **Starting a Diesel Engine** (page 108).

High Beam Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the high beam headlamps on. It will flash when you use the headlamp flasher.

Information Indicator



It will illuminate when a new message is stored in the information display. It will be red or amber in color depending on the severity of the message and will remain on until the cause of the message has been rectified. See **Information Messages** (page 72).

Lane Keeping System Indicator



It will illuminate when this feature is switched off or in conjunction with a message. See **Lane Keeping System** (page 152).

Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp



If it illuminates, refuel as soon as possible.

Headlamp and Parking Lamp Indicator



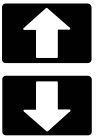
It will illuminate when you switch the headlamps or parking lamps on.

Rear Fog Lamps Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

Shift Indicator



It will illuminate to inform you that shifting to a higher or lower gear as indicated may give better fuel economy and lower CO2 emissions. It will not illuminate during periods of high acceleration, braking or when the clutch pedal is pressed.

Stability Control Off Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the system off. It will go out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off.

Stability Control Warning Lamp



It will flash when the system is active. If it remains illuminated or does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a malfunction. During a malfunction the system will switch off. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

Start-Stop Indicator



It will illuminate to inform you when the engine shuts down or in conjunction with a message. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 110). See **Information Messages** (page 72).

AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

Door Ajar

Sounds if the vehicle's speed exceeds the pre-determined limit and any of the doors are open or ajar. The chime will only sound once.

Engine On Warning Chime

A warning chime will sound when any door is opened if the vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

Keyless Warning Alert (If Equipped)

Sounds the horn twice when you exit the vehicle and the keyless vehicle is in RUN, indicating the vehicle is still on.

Headlamps On Warning Chime

Sounds when you switch the ignition off and open the driver's door and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

Headlight Exit Delay

Sounds when the headlight exit delay has been activated.

Parking Brake On Warning Chime

Sounds when you have left the parking brake on and drive your vehicle. If the warning chime remains on after you have released the parking brake, have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

Seatbelt Minder

WARNINGS

The seatbelt minder remains in stand-by mode when the front seatbelts have been fastened. It will be reactivated if either seatbelt is unfastened.

Do not sit on top of a fastened seatbelt to prevent the seatbelt minder from coming on. The occupant protection system will only provide optimum protection when you use the seatbelt properly.

Sounds when the vehicle's speed exceeds the pre-determined limit, and the driver or front passenger (if equipped) seatbelts are unfastened. The chime will stop after approximately five minutes.

Automatic Transmission Warning Chime

Sounds when you have not moved the transmission selector lever to position **P**. A message will be shown in the display.

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

You can control various systems on your vehicle using the information display controls on the steering wheel. The information display will show the corresponding information.

Information Display Controls



E138659

- Press the up or down arrow button to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.
- Press the right arrow button to enter a submenu.
- Press the left arrow button to exit a submenu.
- Press and hold the left arrow button at any time to return to the main menu display.
- Press the **OK** button to choose and confirm settings or messages.

Menu Structure - Information Display

You can access the menu using the information display control.

Note: *Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.*

Trip computer[1]

Message
Trip odometer
Speed
Dist to empty
Instant fuel
Average fuel
Average speed

[1] See **Trip Computer** (page 72). See **Gauges** (page 60).

Information

Message
Seatbelts
Driver alert
Traffic signs
Intelligent AWD

Settings

Message		Action
Driver assist	Traction ctrl	On or Off
	BLIS	On or Off
	City Stop	On or Off
	Forward alert	Sensitivity
	Driver alert	On or Off
	Hill start assist	On or Off
	Deflate detect	
	Traffic signs	On or Off
		Speed warning

Message			Action
	Lane keeping		Reset
			Sensitivity
			Intensity
Lighting	Rain light		On or Off
	Dimming		Manual or Auto
	Auto highbeam		On or Off
			Sensitivity
	Hdlamp delay		Manual or xx Seconds
Display	Navigation info		Choose your applicable setting
	Language		Choose your applicable setting
	Measure unit		Choose your applicable setting
	Temp unit		Choose your applicable setting
Chimes	Park slot found		On or Off
	Information		On or Off
	Warning		On or Off
Convenience	Alarm		Choose your applicable setting
	Compass		On or Off
	Aux heater	Park heater	On or Off
			Time 1
			Time 2
			Once
			Heat now

System Check

All active warnings will display first if applicable. The system check menu may appear different based upon equipment options and current vehicle status. Press the up or down arrow button to scroll through the list.

Menu Structure - Information and Entertainment Display

You can access the menu using the information and entertainment display control. See **At a Glance** (page 9).

Note: *Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.*

SYNC-Media allows you to access the SYNC features.

Phone

Message	
Dial a number	
Redial	
Phonebook	
Call history	Incoming calls
	Outgoing calls
	Missed calls
Speed Dial	
Text messaging	
BT Devices	
Phone settings	Set as master
	Phonebook pref.
	Set ringtone
	Phone status
	Text msg notify
Emerg. Assist.	

Menu

Message		Action
SYNC-Settings	Bluetooth on	
	BT Devices	
	Set defaults	
	Master reset	
	Install on SYNC	
	System info	
	Voice settings	Choose your applicable setting
	Browse USB	
SYNC-Applications		
Navigation	Route options	Route
		Driver:
		Eco settings
		Dynamic
		Motorway
		Tunnel
		Ferry/motorail
		Toll
		Seasonal roads
		Toll sticker
	Map display	Map content
		Arrows on map:
		Nav time display:
		Map heading up
		Best contrast
	Assistance options	Signs / lane

Message		Action
		Nav icons in lists
		Hazard spot warning
	Personal data	Clear last destinations
		Clear favourites
		Delete home address
		Clear all
	Reset all settings	
Audio settings	Adaptive volume	
	Sound	
	Nav audio mixing	
	DSP settings	Choose your applicable setting
	DSP equaliser	Choose your applicable setting
	TA	On or Off
	News announcement	On or Off
	Alt. frequency	On or Off
	RDS regional	On or Off
	DAB service link	On or Off
Clock settings	Auto time (GPS)	On or Off
	Set time	
	Set date	
	Set time zone	
	Summer time	On or Off
	24-hour mode	On or Off

CLOCK

Type 1

To adjust the clock, switch the ignition on and press buttons H or M on the information and entertainment display as necessary.

Type 2

Note: *Use the information display to adjust the clock. See* ***General Information*** *(page 66).*

TRIP COMPUTER

Resetting the Trip Computer

Press and hold ***OK*** on the current screen to reset the respective trip, distance, time and average fuel information.

Trip Odometer

Registers the distance traveled of individual journeys.

Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle will travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern may cause the value to vary.

Average Fuel

Indicates the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.

Press the right arrow button on the current screen to see the EcoMode menu.

Digital Speedometer

The speed your vehicle is traveling at will display as a digital number.

All Value

Indicates all the respective trip, distance and average fuel information.

PERSONALIZED SETTINGS

Measure Units

To swap between imperial and metric units, scroll to this display and press the **OK** button.

Switching Chimes Off

To switch chimes off, scroll to this display and press the **OK** button.

The following chimes can be switched off:

- Warning messages.
- Information messages.

INFORMATION MESSAGES



E130248

Press the ***OK*** button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display. Other messages will be removed automatically after a short time.

Certain messages need to be confirmed before you can access the menus.

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all of the messages will display or be available. Certain messages may be abbreviated or shortened depending upon which cluster type you have.*

Message Indicator (If Equipped)



The message indicator illuminates to supplement some messages. It will be red or amber in color depending on the severity of the message and will remain on until the cause of the message has been rectified.

Some messages will be supplemented by a system specific symbol with a message indicator.

Active City Stop

Message	Indicator	Action
Active City Stop Sensor Blocked Clean Screen	amber	See **Active City Stop** (page 157).
Active City Stop Not Available	amber	See **Active City Stop** (page 157).
Active City Stop Auto Braking	-	See **Active City Stop** (page 157).

Airbag

Message	Message indicator	Action
Airbag Fault Service Now	amber	Displays when the system requires service due to a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Alarm

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Alarm Activated Check Vehicle	Amber	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry. See **Anti-Theft Alarm** (page 38).
Alarm Fault Service Required	-	Displays when the system requires service due to a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Automatic High Beam Control

Message	Indicator	Action
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	amber	Displays when the front camera sensor has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield.
Front Camera Fault Service Required	amber	Displays when the front camera sensor has malfunctioned. Have this checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	-	Displays when the front camera sensor has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the sensor to cool down.

Battery and Charging System

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Electrical System Overvoltage Stop Safely	Red	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the ignition off. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Battery Low See Manual	Red	Displays to warn of a low battery condition. Switch off all unneeded electrical accessories. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Blind Spot Monitor and Cross Traffic Alert System

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Blindspot Low Visibility See Manual	Amber	Displayed when the blind spot information system and cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 155).
Blindspot Left Sensor Fault Service Required	Amber	Displayed when a fault with the system has occurred. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Blindspot Right Sensor Fault Service Required	Amber	Displayed when a fault with the system has occurred. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Blindspot Not Available Trailer Attached	Amber	Displayed when the system is not available due to trailer use. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 155).
Cross Traffic Vehicle Coming From Left	Amber	Displayed when the system detects a vehicle. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 155).
Cross Traffic Vehicle Coming From Right	Amber	Displayed when the system detects a vehicle. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 155).
Cross Traffic Sensor Blocked See Manual	Amber	Displayed when the blind spot information system and cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 155).
Cross Traffic Fault Service Required	Amber	Displays when the system requires service due to a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Cross Traffic Not Available Trailer Attached	-	Displayed when the system is not available due to trailer use. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 155).

Child Power Lock

Message	Message indicator	Action
Child Lock Fault Service Required	amber	Displays when a fault with the system has occurs. Press the switch to switch them off, then press the switch again to switch them on. If the problem persists, contact an authorized dealer.

Climate Control

Message	Indicator	Action
Park Heater On	amber	
Park Heater Off	-	

Cruise Control and Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Message	Indicator	Action
Front Radar Sensor Blocked See Manual	amber	See **Cruise Control** (page 141).
ACC Not Available	amber	See **Cruise Control** (page 141).
Collision Warning Fault Service Required	amber	See **Cruise Control** (page 141).
Collision Warn Not Available	amber	See **Cruise Control** (page 141).
Collision Warning Fault Service Required	amber	See **Cruise Control** (page 141).

Driver Alert

Message	Indicator	Action
Driver Fatigue Warning Rest Now	red	Stop and rest as soon as it is safe to do so.
Driver Fatigue Warning Rest Suggested	amber	Take a rest break soon.

Doors

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Driver Door Ajar	Red	Displays when the door listed is not completely closed and your vehicle is moving.
Passenger Door Ajar	Red	Displays when the door listed is not completely closed and your vehicle is moving.
Driver Side Rear Door Ajar	Red	Displays when the door listed is not completely closed and your vehicle is moving.
Passenger Side Rear Door Ajar	Red	Displays when the door listed is not completely closed and your vehicle is moving.
Trunk Ajar	Red	Displays when the luggage compartment is not completely closed and your vehicle is moving.

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Hood Ajar	Red	Displays when the hood is not completely closed and your vehicle is moving.
Driver Door Ajar	-	Displays when the door listed is not completely closed.
Passenger Door Ajar	-	Displays when the door listed is not completely closed.
Driver Side Rear Door Ajar	-	Displays when the door listed is not completely closed.
Passenger Side Rear Door Ajar	-	Displays when the door listed is not completely closed.
Trunk Ajar	-	Displays when the luggage compartment is not completely closed.
Hood Ajar	-	Displays when the hood is not completely closed.

Engine

Message	Message Indicator	Action
High Engine Temperature Stop Safely	Red	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and allow the engine to cool. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 192).
Engine Fault Service Now	Amber	Engine service is required. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Water Detected in Fuel Service Required	Amber	Displays when water is detected in the fuel. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Engine Oil Level Low Check Level	-	Check the engine oil level See **Engine Oil Check** (page 191).

Hill Start Assist

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Hill Start Assist Not Available	Amber	Displays when hill start assist is not available. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible. See **Hill Start Assist** (page 122).

Keyless Vehicle

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Ford KeyFree Key Not Inside Car	Red	Displayed when a valid key is not detected within your vehicle. See **Keyless Starting** (page 104).
Ford KeyFree Key Inside Vehicle	Amber	Displays to remind you that the key is in the trunk. See **Keyless Starting** (page 104).
Switch Ignition Off Press ENGINE Start/Stop button	Red	Displayed as a reminder to switch the ignition off. See **Keyless Starting** (page 104).
Press Brake to Start	-	Displayed as a reminder to press the brake while starting your vehicle.
Key Battery Low Replace Soon	-	Displays when the key battery is low. Change the battery as soon as possible. See **Remote Control** (page 27).
Ford KeyFree No Key Detected	-	Displayed if the key is not detected by the system. See **Keyless Starting** (page 104).
Place Key in Backup Location	-	See **Keyless Starting** (page 104).
Steering Lock Engaged. Turn Steering Wheel	-	See **Steering Wheel Lock** (page 106).

Lane Keeping Aid

Message	Indicator	Action
Lane Keeping Sys Fault Service Required	amber	Displays when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Lighting

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Headlamp Fault Service Required	Amber	Displays when an electrical system problem occurs with the headlamp system. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 196).
Low Beam Bulb Fault	-	Displays when the low beam headlamp bulb has burned out. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 196).
Brake Lamp Bulb Fault	-	Displays when the brake lamp bulb has burned out. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 196).
Rear Fog Lamp Bulb Fault	-	Displays when the rear fog lamp bulb has burned out. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 196).
Trailer Brake Lamp Bulb Fault	-	Displays when the trailer brake lamp bulb has burned out. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Trailer Turn Lamp Bulb Fault	-	Displays when the trailer turn lamp bulb has burned out. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Maintenance

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Brake Fluid Level Low Service Now	Red	Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 193).
Washer Fluid Level Low	-	Displays when the washer fluid is low and needs to be refilled. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 193).
Check Fuel Fill Inlet	-	Displays when the fuel fill inlet was not properly closed. See **Refueling** (page 115).
Oil Change Required	-	Displays when the engine oil life is depleted and requires a change. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 191).

Occupant Protection

Message	Indicator	Action
Service Beltminder	-	Displays when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Parking Aid

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Parking Aid Fault Service Required	Amber	Displays when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer. See **Parking Aid** (page 133).
Rear Park Aid Disabled Trailer Attached	-	Displays when a trailer is attached.

Parking Brake

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Park Brake Applied	Red	Displays when the parking brake is set, the engine is running and your vehicle is moving more than 5 km/h. If the warning stays on after the parking brake is released, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Park Brake Applied	Amber	See **Parking Brake** (page 130).
Park Brake Fault Service Now	Amber	Displays when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Power Steering

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Steering Loss Stop Safely	Red	The power steering system is not working. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Steering Assist Fault Service required	Amber	The power steering system is not working. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Steering Fault Service Now	Amber	The power steering system has detected a condition within the power steering system or passive entry or passive start system requires service. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Start-Stop

Message	Message indicator	Action
Auto StartStop Switch Ignition Off	red	Switch the ignition off before leaving your vehicle if the system has shut down the engine.

Message	Message indicator	Action
		See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 110).
Auto StartStop Fault Service Required	amber	Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.
Auto StartStop Press a Pedal to Start Engine	-	The engine needs to be restarted, press the clutch pedal to start. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 110).
Auto StartStop Select Neutral to Start Engine	-	Select neutral for the system to restart the engine. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 110).
Auto StartStop Manual Restart Required	-	The system is not functioning. A manual restart is required.

Starting System

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Exhaust Filter Over-loaded Drive to Clean	Amber	See **Diesel Particulate Filter** (page 108).
Exhaust Filter Cleaning	-	See **Diesel Particulate Filter** (page 108).
Exhaust Filter Drive Complete	-	See **Diesel Particulate Filter** (page 108).
Engine Preheating	-	See **Starting a Diesel Engine** (page 108).
Press Brake to Start	-	Displays when starting your vehicle as a reminder to apply the brake.
Press Clutch to Start	-	Displays when starting your vehicle as a reminder to apply the clutch.
Press brake and clutch to start	-	Displays when starting your vehicle as a reminder to apply the brake and clutch.
Cranking Time Exceeded	-	Displays when your vehicle fails to start.

Towing

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Trailer Sway Reduce Speed	Red	See **Trailer Sway Control** (page 163).

Transmission and Four-Wheel Drive

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Transmission Too Hot Press Brake	Red	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
Transmission Too Hot Press Brake	Amber	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
Transmission Overtemperature Stop Safely	Amber	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
Transmission Overheating Stop Safely	Amber	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
Transmission Service required	Amber	Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
4WD Fault Service Required	Amber	The system is not functioning correctly and defaulted to front-wheel drive. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible. See **Using Four-Wheel Drive** (page 124).
4WD Off	Amber	Displays when the system disables automatically and enters front-wheel drive only mode to protect driveline components. See **Using Four-Wheel Drive** (page 124).
4WD Temporarily Disabled	Amber	The system has overheated and defaulted to front-wheel drive. See **Using Four-Wheel Drive** (page 124).

Message	Message Indicator	Action
4WD Restored	-	Displays when system operation has been restored. See **Using Four-Wheel Drive** (page 124).
Transmission Not in Park Select P	-	Displays as a reminder to move the transmission selector lever to park.
Transmission Hot Stop or Speed Up	-	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
Transmission Hot Wait {time:#0} mins	-	Transmission is hot. Wait as needed to let it cool.
Transmission Too Hot Press Brake	-	Transmission is getting hot. Stop to let it cool down.
Transmission Malfunction Service Now	Red	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission Warming Up Please Wait	-	At low outside temperatures, after starting the engine, it may take the transmission several seconds to engage reverse or drive. Keep the brake pedal depressed until these messages disappear from the display.
Transmission Limited Function See Manual	-	Some gears may not be available. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible. See **Automatic Transmission** (page 118).
Press Brake to Unlock Gearshift Lever	-	Displays to request the operator to apply the brake as needed by the transmission.
Gearshift Lever Unlocked	-	Displays when the transmission shift lever is unlocked and free to select gears.

Traction Control

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Traction control Off	-	Displays when the traction control system has been switched off. See **Using Traction Control** (page 131).

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Outside Air

Keep the air intakes in front of the windshield free from obstruction (such as snow or leaves) to allow the climate control system to function effectively.

Recirculated Air

WARNING

Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up. If the windows fog up, follow the settings for demisting the windshield.

The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. Outside air does not enter your vehicle.

Heating

Heating performance depends on the temperature of the coolant.

General Information on Controlling the Interior Climate

Close the windows.

Warming the Interior

Direct the air toward your feet. In cold or humid weather conditions, direct some of the air toward the windshield and the door windows.

Cooling the Interior

Direct the air toward your face.

Air Conditioning

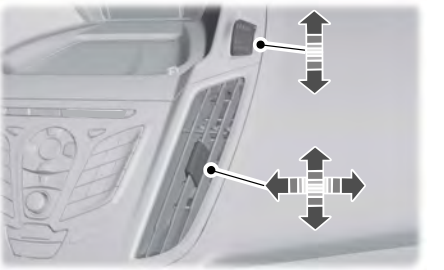
The system directs condensation to the outside of your vehicle, which could cause a small pool of water to form under your vehicle. This is normal.

Note: *The air conditioning operates only when the temperature is above 4°C.*

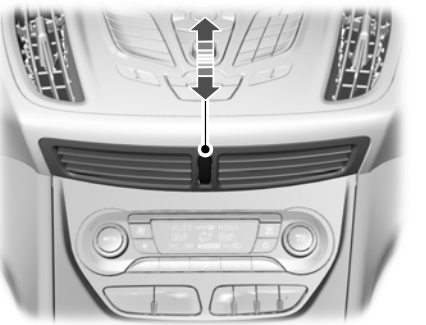
Note: *When you use air conditioning, your vehicle uses more fuel.*

AIR VENTS

Center

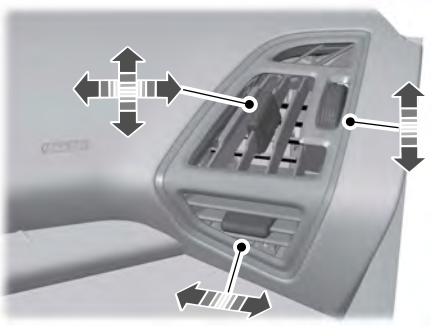


E152449



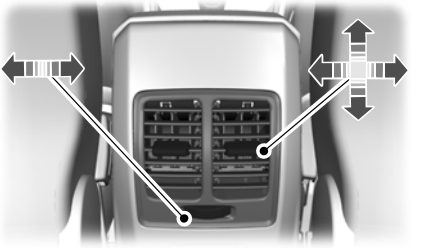
E159050

Side



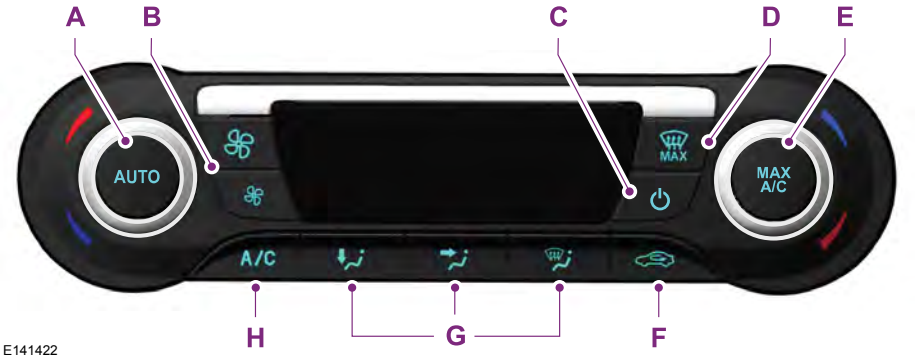
E152450

Center Console



E159049

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL



E141422

A **AUTO:** Press to switch on automatic operation. Adjust to select the desired temperature. Fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air are automatically adjusted to heat or cool the vehicle to maintain the desired temperature. You can also switch off dual zone mode by pressing and holding for more than two seconds.

B **Fan speed control:** Adjusts the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

C **Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.

D **MAX Defrost:** Press to switch on defrost. The driver and passenger settings set to HI, outside air flows through the windshield vents, and fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select maximum defrost.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

E **MAX A/C:** Press for maximum cooling. The driver and passenger settings set to LO, recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.

F **Recirculated air:** Press to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior (when used with A/C) and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

Note: Recirculated air may turn on and off automatically (or prevent you from switching on) in all modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging or to improve cooling efficiency.

G **Air distribution control:** Press to switch airflow from the windshield, instrument panel, or footwell vents on or off. You can distribute air through any combination of these vents.

H **A/C:** Press to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. Use A/C with recirculated air to improve performance and efficiency.

Note: In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though the air conditioning is switched off.

Temperature Control



E133115

You can set the temperature between 15ºC and 30ºC. In position LO, the system switches to permanent cooling. In position HI, the system switches to permanent heating.

Note: *If you select either position LO or HI, the system does not regulate a stable temperature.*

Mono Mode

In this mode, the temperature settings for both the driver side and passenger side are linked. If you adjust the setting using the rotary control on the driver side, the system adjusts the temperature to the same setting on the passenger side.

Switching Mono Mode Off

Select a temperature for the passenger side using the rotary control on the passenger side. Mono mode automatically switches off. The temperature on the driver side remains unchanged. You can now adjust the driver side and passenger side temperatures independently. The temperature settings for each side are shown in the display.

Switching Mono Mode Back On

Press and hold the ***AUTO*** button. The passenger side temperature is adjusted to the driver side temperature setting.

HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE

General Hints

Note: *Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.*

Note: *A small amount of air may be felt from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.*

Note: *To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.*

Note: *Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.*

Note: *Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.*

Manual Climate Control

Note: *To reduce fogging of the windshield during humid weather, adjust the air distribution control to the windshield air vents position. Increase the temperature and fan speed to improve clearing, if required.*

Automatic Climate Control

Note: *Do not adjust the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold. The system automatically adjusts to the previously stored settings. For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.*

Note: *At low ambient temperatures with AUTO selected, the air stream is directed toward the windshield and side windows for as long as the engine remains cold.*

Note: *When the system is switched off, outside air is prevented from entering your vehicle.*

Note: *When the system is in AUTO mode, and the interior and exterior temperatures are high, the system automatically selects recirculated air to maximize cooling of the interior. When the selected air temperature is reached, the system automatically selects outside air.*

Note: *When you select windshield defrosting and defogging, the instrument panel and footwell level functions automatically switch off and air conditioning switches on. Outside air flows into your vehicle.*

Heating the Interior Quickly

	Vehicle With Manual Climate Control	Vehicle With Automatic Climate Control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the highest speed setting.	Press the high fan speed button control.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.	Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the footwell air vents position.	Press the footwell button to distribute air to the footwell air vents.

Recommended Settings for Heating

	Vehicle With Manual Climate Control	Vehicle With Automatic Climate Control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the second speed setting.	Press the slow fan speed button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the footwell and windshield air vents position.	Press the footwell and windshield air distribution buttons.
4		Close the instrument panel air vents. Open the side air vents and direct them toward the side windows.

Cooling the Interior Quickly

	Vehicle With Manual Climate Control	Vehicle With Automatic Climate Control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the highest speed setting.	Press the AUTO button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the MAX A/C position.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel air vents position.	

Recommended Settings for Cooling

	Vehicle With Manual Climate Control	Vehicle With Automatic Climate Control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the second speed setting.	Press the slow fan speed button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel air vents position.	Press the instrument panel vent button to distribute air to the instrument panel air vents.

Vehicle Stationary for Extended Periods During Extreme High Ambient Temperatures

	Vehicle With Manual Climate Control	Vehicle With Automatic Climate Control
1	Apply the parking brake.	Apply the parking brake.
2	Move the transmission selector lever to position P.	Move the transmission selector lever to position P.
3	Adjust the temperature control to the MAX A/C position.	Press the MAX A/C button.
4	Adjust the fan speed to the lowest speed setting.	

Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather

	Vehicle With Manual Climate Control	Vehicle With Automatic Climate Control
1	Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel and footwell air vents positions.	Press the windshield defrosting and defogging button.
2	Press the A/C button.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
3	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.	

	Vehicle With Manual Climate Control	Vehicle With Automatic Climate Control
4	Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting.	
5	Direct the instrument panel side air vents toward the side windows.	
6	Close the instrument panel vents.	

Maximum Cooling Performance in Instrument Panel or Instrument Panel and Footwell Positions

1. Adjust the temperature control to the lowest setting.
2. Press the A/C and recirculated air buttons.
3. Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting initially and then adjust it to suit the desired comfort level.

HEATED WINDOWS AND MIRRORS

Note: *Make sure the engine is running before operating the heated windows.*

Heated Windshield



Press the button to clear the window of thin ice and fog.

Heated Rear Window



Press the button to clear the window of thin ice and fog. Press the button to switch the system off. The heated rear window will automatically turn off after a short period of time.

Note: *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean the inside of the rear window or to remove decals from the inside of the rear window. This may cause damage to the heated grid lines and will not be covered by your warranty.*

Heated Exterior Mirror

Note: *Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or attempt to readjust the mirror glass if it is frozen in place. These actions could cause damage to the glass and mirrors.*

Note: *Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.*

Both mirrors are heated to remove ice, mist and fog when the heated rear window is switched on.

CABIN AIR FILTER

The cabin air filter is under the instrument panel in the passenger footwell area.

The system filters airborne particles such as dust, spores and pollen in the air supplied to and recirculated in the interior of your vehicle.

Make sure you have a cabin air filter installed at all times. Running the system without a filter in place could degrade or damage the system.

Your vehicle cabin air filter gives you and your passengers the following benefits:

- It improves your driving comfort by reducing particle concentration.
- It improves the interior compartment cleanliness.
- It protects the climate control components from particle deposits.

Change the air filter element at the proper intervals.

For additional cabin air filter information, or to replace the filter, see an authorized dealer.

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

WARNINGS

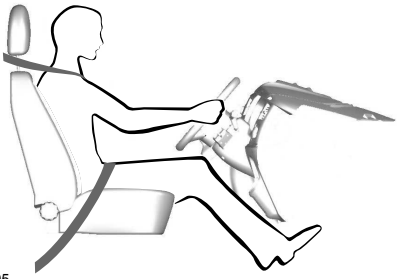
It is extremely dangerous to ride in the cargo area inside or outside the vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of the vehicle that is not fitted with seats and seatbelts. Be sure that everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and is using a seatbelt properly.

Ensure that all parts of passengers are inside the vehicle when in motion.

Do not recline the seatback too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a collision.

Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far, can result in serious injury or death in the event of a collision. Always sit upright against your seatback, with your feet on the floor.

Do not place objects higher than the seatback to reduce the risk of serious injury in the event of a collision or during heavy braking.



E68595

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and air bags will provide optimum protection in the event of a collision.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seatback more than 30 degrees.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm between your breastbone and the air bag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

HEAD RESTRAINTS

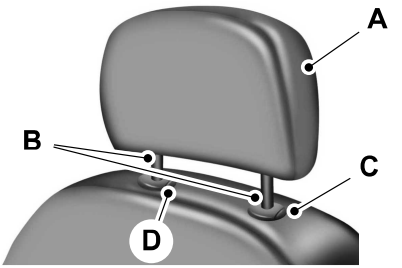
WARNINGS

Fully adjust the head restraints before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

Raise the rear head restraints when passengers occupy the rear seats.

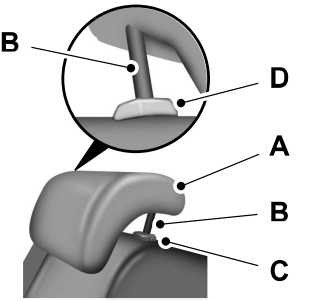
When front seats are in use the head restraints must not be removed

Front seat head restraint



E138642

Rear head restraints



E138645

The head restraints consist of:

A	an energy absorbing head restraint
B	two steel stems
C	guide sleeve adjust and unlock button
D	guide sleeve unlock and remove button

Adjusting the Head Restraint

Raising the Head Restraint

Pull the head restraint up.

Lowering the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button C.
2. Push the head restraint down.

Removing the Head Restraint

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold buttons C and D.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

Tilting the Head Restraint

The front head restraints may have a tilting feature for extra comfort. To tilt the head restraint, do the following:



E144727

1. Adjust the seat back to an upright driving or riding position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the desired position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivot it forward again to release it to the rearward, un-tilted position.

MANUAL SEATS

WARNING

Do not adjust the driver's seat or seatback when your vehicle is moving.

Moving the Seat Backward and Forward

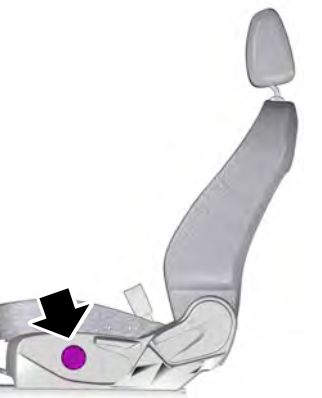


E130249

WARNING

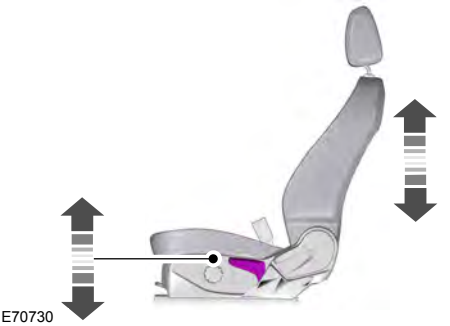
Rock the seat backward and forward after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged.

Adjusting the Lumbar Support



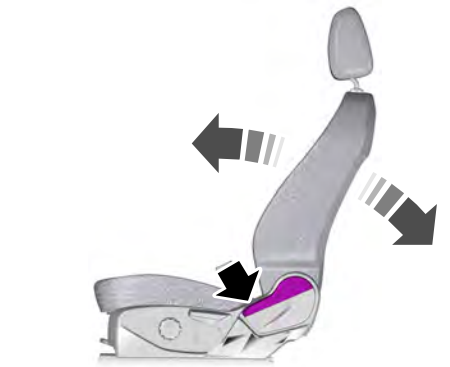
E152451

Adjusting the Height of the Driver's Seat



E70730

Recline Adjustment



E138646

WARNING

Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position. Pull on the seatback to make sure that it has fully latched after returning the seatback to its original position. An unlatched seat may become dangerous if you stop suddenly or have a collision.

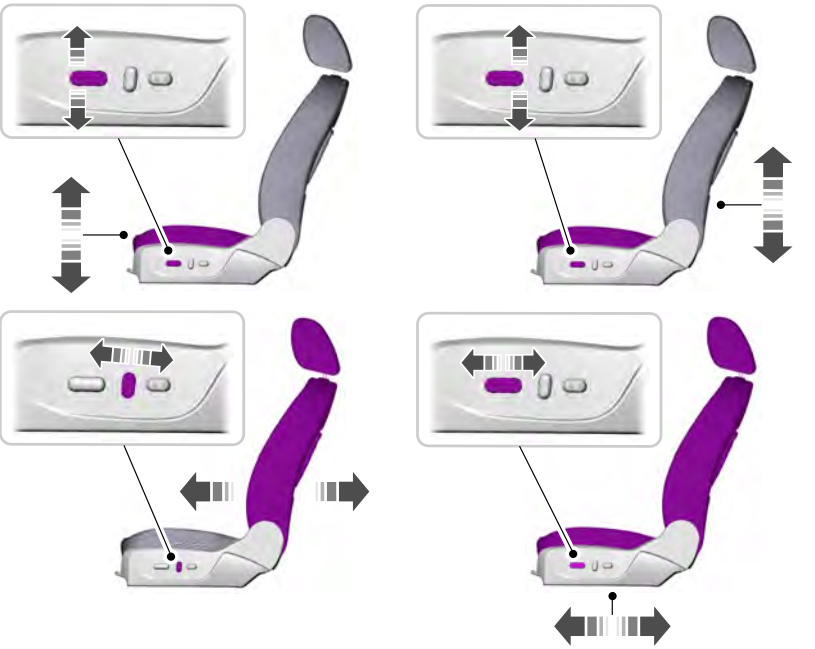
POWER SEATS

WARNINGS

Do not adjust the driver's seat or seatback when your vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.

10-Way



E138647

Power Lumbar



E138648

REAR SEATS

Folding the Seatback

WARNING

When folding the seatbacks down, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seatback and seat frame.



E159654

With the seat empty, pull the lever up to fold the seatback forward.

Note: *Lower the head restraints. See* ***Rear Seats*** *(page 98).*

Unfolding the Seatback

WARNINGS

When folding the seatbacks up, make sure that the seatbelts are visible to an occupant and not caught behind the seat.

Make sure that the seats and the seatbacks are secure and fully engaged in their catches.

Recline Adjustment

With the seat occupied, pull the lever up to recline the seat backward.

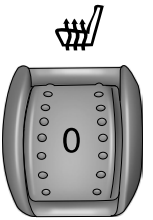
HEATED SEATS (If Equipped)

WARNING

People who are unable to feel pain to their skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the heated seat. The heated seat may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This may cause the heated seat to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles or other pointed objects. This may damage the heating element which may cause the heated seat to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.
- Operate the heated seats unless the engine is running. Doing so can cause the battery to lose charge.



E138653

Adjust the control to the desired heat setting.

REAR SEAT ARMREST (If Equipped)



E138656

Fold the armrest down to use the armrest and cupholder.

12 Volt DC Power Point

WARNING

Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Note: *When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.*

If the power supply does not work after you switch the ignition off, switch the ignition on.

Note: *Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug.*

Note: *Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watts or a fuse may blow.*

Note: *Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.*

Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This damages the power point and may blow the fuse.

Run the vehicle for full capacity use of the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

Locations

Power points may be in the following locations:

- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- In the cargo area.

230 Volt AC Power Point (If Equipped)

WARNING

Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Do not use any extension cord with the 230 volt AC power point, since it will defeat the safety protection design. Doing so may cause the power point to overload due to powering multiple devices that can reach beyond the 150 watt load limit and could result in fire or serious injury.

Note: *The power point turns off when you switch the ignition off, or the battery voltage drops below 11 volts.*

You can use the power point for electric devices that require up to 150 watts. It is on the rear of the center console.

Note: *Depending on the country that your vehicle is built, the voltage supply is either 110 volts or 230 volts.*

When the indicator light on the power point is:

- On: The power point is working, the ignition is on and a device is plugged in.
- Off: The power point is off, the ignition is off or no device is plugged in.
- Flashing: The power point is in fault mode.

The power outlet temporarily turns off power when in fault mode if the device exceeds the 150 watt limit. Unplug your device and switch the ignition off. Switch the ignition back on, but do not plug your device back in. Let the system cool off and switch the ignition off to reset the fault mode. Switch the ignition back on and make sure the indicator light remains on.

Do not use the power point for certain electric devices, including:

- Cathode-ray, tube-type televisions.
- Motor loads, such as vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools or compressor-driven refrigerators.
- Measuring devices, which process precise data, such as medical equipment or measuring equipment.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply such as microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch-sensor lamps.

CUP HOLDERS

Note: *Stow items in the cupholder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or crashes, including hot drinks which may spill.*

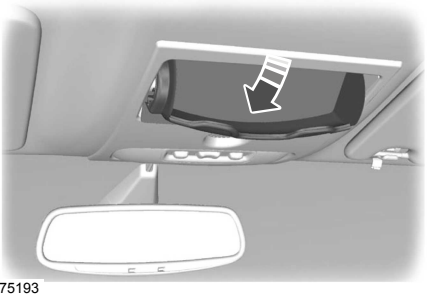
WARNING

Use only soft cups in the cup holders. Hard objects can injure you in a crash.



E72630

OVERHEAD CONSOLE



E75193

Press near the rear edge of the door to open it.

FOLDING TRAY

WARNING

Do not use the trays when your vehicle is moving. Make sure that you secure the trays in the lowered position before setting off.

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS

Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.

Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

IGNITION SWITCH



E247596

Note: *Make sure the key is clean before inserting it into any lock cylinder.*

Note: *Do not leave the key in the ignition for an extended period of time when the engine is not running. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from losing charge.*

Switching the Ignition Off

Turn the key to position ***0***.

Switching the Ignition On

Turn the key to position ***I***. Electrical accessories, for example the radio, operate without the engine running.

Switching the Ignition On to Accessory Mode

Turn the key to position ***II***. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Starting the Engine

Turn the key to position ***III***. Release the key when the engine starts.

KEYLESS STARTING

WARNING


Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle. Failure to deactivate the steering wheel lock could result in a crash.

Note: *The system may not function if the remote control is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as cell phones.*

Note: *The ignition will automatically switch off if your vehicle is left unattended. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from losing charge.*

Note: *A valid passive key must be located inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.*

Switching the Ignition On (Accessory Mode)

Press the button once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal. It is located on the instrument panel near the steering wheel. See **At a Glance** (page 9). All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Press the button again without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal to turn your vehicle off completely.

Starting Your Vehicle

Manual Transmission

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Briefly press the button.

Note: *Releasing the clutch pedal during engine start will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.*

Automatic Transmission

1. Move the transmission selector lever to park.
2. Fully depress the brake pedal.
3. Briefly press the button.

Note: *Releasing the brake pedal during engine start will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.*

Diesel Engine

Note: *Engine cranking will not commence until the engine glow plug cycle has been completed. This may take several seconds in extremely cold conditions.*

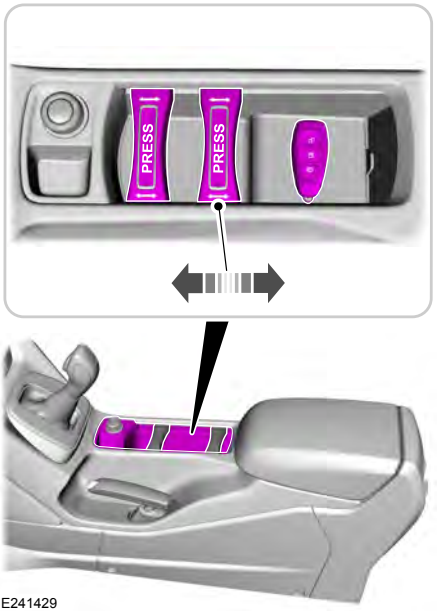
Failure to Start

The system does not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The passive key battery has no charge.

Note: *Remove all other keys from the center console.*

If you are unable to start your vehicle, do the following:



E241429



E241281

1. Open the cup holder cover.
2. Place the passive key flat on the symbol at the bottom of the cup holder.
3. With the passive key in this position, you can use the push button ignition switch to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

Manual Transmission

If the engine does not crank when the clutch pedal has been fully depressed and the button is pressed:

1. Fully depress both the clutch and brake pedals.
2. Press the button until the engine has started.

Note: *Releasing the clutch pedal during engine start will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on. A message will be shown in the display.*

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

Note: *The ignition, all electrical circuits warning lamps and indicators will be switched off.*

Manual Transmission

Briefly press the button.

Automatic Transmission

1. Move the transmission selector lever to park.
2. Press the button.

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving

WARNING

Switching off the engine when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not lock, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off, some electrical circuits, including air bags, warning lamps and indicators may also be off. If the ignition was turned off accidentally, you can shift into neutral (N) and re-start the engine.

1. Press and hold the button for a moment, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Move the transmission selector lever to neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. When your vehicle has stopped, move the transmission selector lever to park and switch the ignition off.

Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart your vehicle within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if a valid passive key is not detected.

Within 10 seconds of switching your vehicle off, press the brake pedal and press the button. After 10 seconds have expired, you can no longer start your vehicle if a valid passive key is not detected.

Once your vehicle has started, it remains running until you press the button, even if a valid passive key has not been detected. If you open and close a door while your vehicle is running, the system searches for a valid passive key. You cannot start your vehicle if a valid passive key is not detected within 10 seconds.

Manual Transmission

If the engine does not crank when the clutch pedal has been fully depressed and the button is pressed:

1. Fully depress both the clutch and brake pedals
2. Press the button until the engine has started.

Note: *Releasing the clutch pedal during engine start will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on. A message will be shown in the display.*

STEERING WHEEL LOCK

WARNING

Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

Vehicles with Keyless Starting

Note: *The steering wheel lock does not engage when the ignition is on or if your vehicle is moving.*

Your vehicle has an electronically controlled steering wheel lock. This operates automatically.

The steering wheel lock engages after a short period after you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside of your vehicle.

Unlocking the Steering Wheel

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

Switch the ignition on or press the brake pedal.

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

Switch the ignition on or press the clutch pedal.

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

Note: *You can only operate the starter for a limited period of time, for example 10 seconds. The number of start attempts is limited to approximately six. If you exceed this limit, the system will not allow you to try again until a period of time has elapsed, for example 30 minutes.*

Cold or Hot Engine

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

Note: *Releasing the clutch pedal while the engine is starting will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.*

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Start the engine.

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position **P** or **N**.
2. Start the engine.

All Vehicles

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, wait for a short period and try again.

If the engine does not start after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and follow the flooded engine procedure.

If you have difficulty starting the engine when the temperature is below -25ºC, press the accelerator pedal to the mid-way point of its travel and try again.

Flooded Engine

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Start the engine.

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position **P** or **N**.
2. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Start the engine.

All Vehicles

If the engine does not start, repeat the cold or hot engine procedure.

Engine Idle Speed after Starting

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

The idle speed will vary depending on certain factors. These include vehicle component and ambient temperatures as well as electrical and climate system demands.

Failure to Start

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

Note: *Remove all other keys from the center console.*

If the engine does not crank when the clutch pedal has been fully depressed and the ignition key is turned to position **III**.

1. Fully depress the clutch and brake pedals.
2. Turn the key to position **III** until the engine has started.

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE

Cold or Hot Engine

All Vehicles

Note: *When the temperature is below -15ºC, you may need to crank the engine for up to 10 seconds.*

Note: *You can only operate the starter for a limited period of time.*

Note: *After a limited number of attempts to start your engine, the system will not allow you to try again until a period of time has elapsed, for example 30 minutes.*



Switch the ignition on and wait until the glow plug indicator goes off.

Vehicles With Manual Transmission

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

Note: *Releasing the clutch pedal while the engine is starting stops the engine from cranking and returns to the ignition on position.*

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Start the engine.

Vehicles With Automatic Transmission

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

Note: *Releasing the brake pedal while the engine is starting stops the engine from cranking and returns to the ignition on position.*

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Fully depress the brake pedal.
3. Start the engine.

Failure to Start

Vehicles With Manual Transmission

Note: *Remove all other keys from the center console.*

If the engine does not crank when the clutch pedal has been fully depressed and the ignition key is turned to position **III**.

1. Fully depress the clutch and brake pedals.
2. Turn the key to position **III** until the engine has started.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER

The filter forms part of the emissions reduction system on your vehicle. It filters harmful diesel particulates (soot) from the exhaust gas.

Regeneration

WARNING

Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

Note: *Avoid running out of fuel.*

Note: *During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you may smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to the high temperatures reached during regeneration and is normal.*

Note: *Changes in the engine or exhaust sound may be heard during the regeneration process.*

Note: *Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off. This could happen in low ambient temperatures and independent of the engine coolant temperature, for example short journeys or low coolant temperature.*

The diesel particulate filter on your vehicle requires periodic regeneration to maintain its correct function. Your vehicle will carry out this process automatically.

If your journeys meet one of the following conditions:

- You drive only short distances.
- You frequently switch the ignition on and off.
- Your journeys contain a high level of acceleration and deceleration.

You must carry out occasional trips with the following conditions to assist the regeneration process:

- Drive your vehicle in more favorable conditions, which you will find at higher vehicle speeds in normal driving, on a main road or freeway for a minimum of 20 minutes. This drive may include short stops that will not affect the regeneration process.
- Avoid prolonged idling and always observe speed limits and road conditions.
- Do not switch the ignition off.
- Select a suitable gear to ideally maintain engine speed between 1500 and 3000 RPM.

SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

Vehicles With a Turbocharger

WARNING

Do not switch the engine off when it is running at high speed. If you do, the turbocharger will continue running after the engine oil pressure has dropped to zero. This will lead to premature turbocharger bearing wear.

Release the accelerator pedal. Wait until the engine has reached idle speed and then switch it off.

AUTO-START-STOP

Note: *For vehicles with auto-start-stop, the battery requirement is different. It must be replaced by one of exactly the same specification as the original.*

The system reduces fuel consumption and CO2 emissions by shutting down the engine when your vehicle is idling, for example at traffic lights. The engine will automatically restart when you press the clutch pedal or when required by a vehicle system, for example to recharge the battery.

To obtain maximum benefit from the system, move the transmission lever to neutral and release the clutch pedal during any stop of longer than three seconds.

Using Auto-Start-Stop

WARNINGS

The engine may restart automatically if required by the system.

Switch the ignition off before opening the hood or carrying out any maintenance.

Always switch the ignition off before leaving your vehicle, as the system may have shut down the engine but the ignition will still be live.



The indicator displays in the instrument cluster.

Note: *The system only operates when the engine is warm and the outside temperature is within the operating temperature limits of the system.*

Note: *If you stall the engine, and then press the clutch pedal within a short period of time, the system will automatically restart the engine.*

Note: *The auto-start-stop indicator will illuminate green when the engine shuts down. See* ***Warning Lamps and Indicators*** *(page 61).*

Note: *When the auto-start-stop indicator flashes amber, shift into neutral or press the clutch pedal.*

Note: *If the system detects a malfunction, it will switch off. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.*

Note: *When you switch the system off, the switch will illuminate.*

Note: *The system automatically turns on every time you switch the ignition on. To switch the system off, press the switch in the instrument panel. The system will only be switched off for the current ignition cycle. To turn it on, press the switch again. For item location: See* ***At a Glance*** *(page 9).*

To Stop the Engine

1. Stop your vehicle.
2. Shift into neutral.
3. Release the clutch pedal.
4. Release the accelerator pedal.

The system may not shut down the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- To maintain the interior climate.
- Low battery voltage.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The driver door has been opened.
- Low engine operating temperature.
- Low brake system vacuum.
- If a road speed of 5 km/h has not been exceeded.
- The driver seatbelt has not been fastened.

To Re-Start the Engine

Note: *The transmission must be in neutral.*

Press the clutch pedal.

The system may automatically restart the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- Low battery voltage.
- To maintain the interior climate.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

WARNINGS

Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.

Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as gasoline is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. If fuel is splashed on the skin, wash the affected areas immediately with plenty of soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience any adverse reactions.

FUEL QUALITY - DIESEL

WARNINGS


Do not mix diesel with oil, gasoline or other liquids. This could cause a chemical reaction.


Do not add kerosene, paraffin or gasoline to diesel. This could cause damage to the fuel system.


Use diesel that meets the specification defined by EN 590 or the relevant national specification.

Note: *We recommend that you use only high quality fuel.*

Note: *We do not recommend the use of additional additives or other engine treatments for normal vehicle use.*

Note: *We do not recommend the use of additional additives to prevent fuel waxing.*

Note: *Bio-diesel blended fuels up to 10% (B10) is acceptable to be used in this vehicle.*

Long-Term Storage

Most diesel fuels contain bio-diesel, it is recommended to fill the tank with purely mineral diesel (where available) or add an anti-oxidant prior to long-term storage of your vehicle exceeding two months. Your dealer can help you with a suitable anti-oxidant.

Diesel-Winter Driving

Diesel fuel purchased in the city and coastal regions often has different cold temperature properties than diesel sold in Alpine regions. Wax may form in the vehicle's fuel lines if the vehicle is left outside overnight or for a number of hours in below zero temperatures. This means that the vehicle will not start or run correctly until the wax has melted. To avoid this problem, if a prolonged or overnight stay is planned in an alpine region then it is strongly recommended that the vehicle carry enough fuel to get to the Alpine region and is then refuelled locally so that at least 50% of the fuel volume is Alpine mix diesel. At the time of publication, Alpine mix diesel is available at the following BP service stations: **Victoria** Bright, Corryong and Mansfield **NSW** Jindabyne, Thredbo, Tumut, Talbingo, Adaminaby and Cooma. Please confirm current availability at the time of your trip.

FUEL QUALITY - GASOLINE

WARNINGS


Do not mix gasoline with oil, diesel or other liquids. This could cause a chemical reaction.


Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds (e.g. manganese-based). They could damage the emission system.

Note: *We recommend that you use only high quality fuel.*

Note: *We do not recommend the use of additional additives or other engine treatments for normal vehicle use.*

The engine in your vehicle has been optimised for operation on **95 octane unleaded** petrol that meets the specification defined by **EN 228**, or equivalent.

Your vehicle can operate using **91 octane unleaded**, however if you choose to do so, you may notice some minor loss of performance, economy and increased engine noise.

Note: *Owners should note that the use of petrol containing ethanol can be expected to increase the fuel consumption of your vehicle.*

Note: *Your vehicle may use petrol that contains up to 10% ethanol. Do not use petrol containing more than 10% ethanol in your vehicle. Use of petrol containing more than 10% ethanol may be damaging to your vehicle and may affect your vehicle's warranty.*

Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 10% (E5 and E10).

Long-Term Storage

Most gasoline contains ethanol. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain ethanol if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months. Alternatively, we recommend that you seek advice from an authorized dealer.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Avoid running out of fuel because this situation may have an adverse effect on powertrain components.

If you have run out of fuel:

- You may need to cycle the ignition from off to on several times after refuelling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. On restarting, cranking time will take a few seconds longer than normal. With keyless ignition, just start the engine. Crank time will be longer than usual.
- Normally, adding 4.6 litres of fuel is enough to restart the engine. If your vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep grade, more than 4.6 litres may be required.

Refilling with a Portable Fuel Container

WARNINGS

Do not insert the nozzle of portable fuel containers or aftermarket funnels into the capless fuel system, they could become stuck. This could damage the fuel system and its seal, and may cause fuel to run onto the ground instead of filling the tank, which could result in serious personal injury.

Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

Do not pump fuel into an ungrounded fuel container, as the static electricity produced during the flow of petrol through the nozzle may cause fire.

To avoid static build up:

- Place the approved fuel container on the ground.
- Do not fill the container whilst in the vehicle or utility tray.
- Keep the nozzle in contact with the fuel container whilst filling.

Note: *Do not use aftermarket funnels; they will not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it. The included funnel has been specially designed to work safely with your vehicle.*

When filling your vehicle's fuel tank from a portable fuel container, use the funnel included with your vehicle.


E157452

1. Locate the plastic funnel inside the foam box in the spare wheel well.
2. Slowly insert the funnel into the capless fuel system.
3. Fill your vehicle with fuel from the portable fuel container.
4. When done, clean the funnel or properly dispose of it. Extra funnels can be purchased from your authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

CATALYTIC CONVERTER

WARNING

Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during use, and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

Driving with a Catalytic Converter

WARNINGS

Avoid running out of fuel.

WARNINGS

Do not crank the engine for long periods.

Do not run the engine when a spark plug lead is disconnected.

Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 172).

Do not switch the ignition off when driving.

REFUELING

WARNINGS

Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with the incorrect fuel. This may cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked immediately.

When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

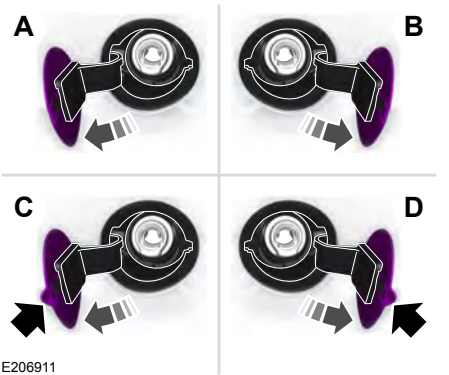
WARNINGS

If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the fuel tank filler door briefly from a distance not less than 20 cm.

Wait at least 10 seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

Stop refueling after the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the second time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

Note: *Your vehicle does not have a fuel filler cap.*



E206911

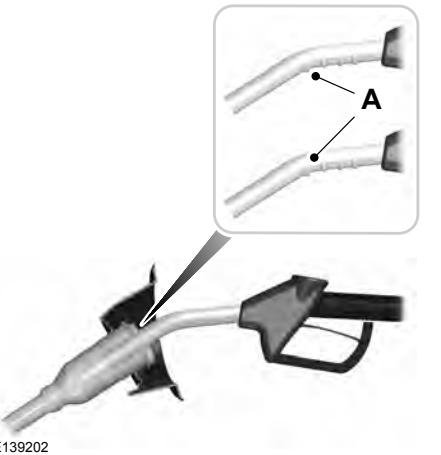
A Type 1: Left hand side - press the fuel tank filler door to open it.

B Type 1: Right hand side - press the fuel tank filler door to open it.

C Type 2: Left hand side - pull the fuel tank filler door to open it.

D Type 2: Right hand side - pull the fuel tank filler door to open it.

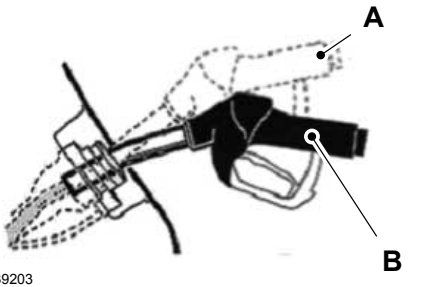
1. Fully open the fuel tank filler door until it engages.



E139202

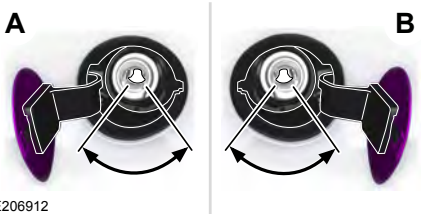
Note: *When you insert the correct size fuel pump nozzle a spring loaded inhibitor will open.*

2. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep it resting on the cover of the fuel tank filler pipe opening.



E139203

3. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A may affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



E206912

4. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



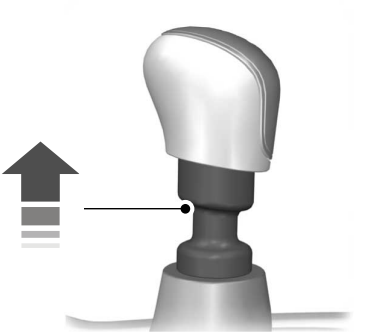
E119081

5. Slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and then slowly remove it.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION

Selecting Reverse Gear

Do not engage reverse gear when your vehicle is moving. This can cause damage to the transmission.



E99067

Raise the collar when you select reverse gear.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 6-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 6F35/6-SPEED POWERSHIFT TRANSMISSION - MPS6/6DCT450

WARNINGS

Always set the parking brake fully and make sure you shift the gearshift lever to park (P). Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

WARNINGS

Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than three seconds will limit engine rpm, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

Some sound and shift characteristics are unique to the PowerShift transmission in your vehicle and will be felt as the transmission operates. These operations are normal and do not affect the durability of the transmission. You may notice the following characteristics of this technology:

- Although the gears shift automatically, the shifting feel and sound experienced from the Powershift transmission is similar to those of a manual transmission, which is normal.
- The Powershift transmission continuously makes electronic adjustments to optimize shift quality. During the initial break-in period, you may feel slight vibrations when accelerating your vehicle from low speeds.

Selector Lever Positions



E142628

P	Park
R	Reverse
N	Neutral
D	Drive
S	Sport mode

WARNING

Apply the brakes before shifting the gearshift lever to a forward or reverse gear. Keep the brakes applied until you are ready to move off.

Press the button on the front of the gearshift lever to shift to each position.

The gearshift lever position will be shown in the instrument cluster display.

Park (P)

WARNINGS

Shift the gearshift lever to park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

Apply the parking brake and shift the gearshift lever to park (P) before leaving your vehicle. Make sure that the gearshift lever is latched in position.

In this position, power is not transmitted to the driven wheels and the transmission is locked. You can start the engine with the gearshift lever in this position.

Note: *A warning tone sounds if you open the driver door and you have not shifted the gearshift lever to park (P).*

Reverse (R)

WARNINGS

Shift the gearshift lever to reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idle speed.

Always come to a complete stop before shifting the gearshift lever out of reverse (R).

Shift the gearshift lever to reverse (R) to allow your vehicle to move backward.

Neutral (N)

In this position, power is not transmitted to the driven wheels but the transmission is not locked. You can start the engine with the gearshift lever in this position.

Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy and smoothness. Shift the gearshift lever to drive (D) to allow your vehicle to move forward and shift automatically through the forward gears.

The transmission will shift to the appropriate gear for optimum performance based on ambient temperature, road gradient, vehicle load and your input.

Sport Mode (S)

Switch on sport mode by shifting the gearshift lever to sport (S).

SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission (If Equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a SelectShift Automatic transmission gearshift lever. The SelectShift Automatic transmission gives you the ability to change gears up or down as desired.

In order to prevent the engine from running at too low an RPM, which may cause it to stall, SelectShift still automatically makes some downshifts if it has determined that you have not downshifted in time. Although SelectShift makes some downshifts for you, it still allows you to downshift at any time as long as the SelectShift determines that damage will not be caused to the engine from over-revving.

Note: *Engine damage may occur if you maintain excessive engine revving without shifting.*

SelectShift does not automatically upshift, even if the engine is approaching the RPM limit. It must be shifted manually by pressing the + button.

If equipped with the toggle on the gearshift lever, press the + toggle switch on the side of the gearshift lever to activate SelectShift.

- Press the (+) button to upshift.
- Press the (-) button to downshift.



E142629

If equipped with steering wheel paddles, pull the + paddle on the steering wheel to activate SelectShift.

- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (–) to downshift.



E144821

The instrument cluster displays your currently selected gear. If a gear is requested but not available due to vehicle conditions (low speed, too high engine speed for requested gear selection), the current gear will flash three times.

Emergency Park Position Release Lever

WARNINGS

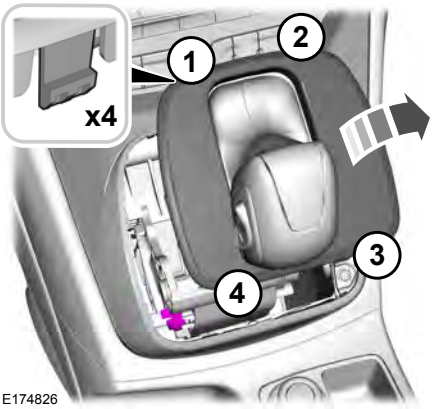
Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brake lamps are working.

This procedure requires you to shift the gearshift lever out of park (P) causing your vehicle to roll. Make sure you fully set the parking brake before attempting to release the gearshift lever.

If you release the parking brake and the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working correctly. The system has detected a fault that requires service.

In the event of an electrical malfunction or if the vehicle battery has no charge, use the following procedure to shift the gearshift lever from the park (P) position.

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.

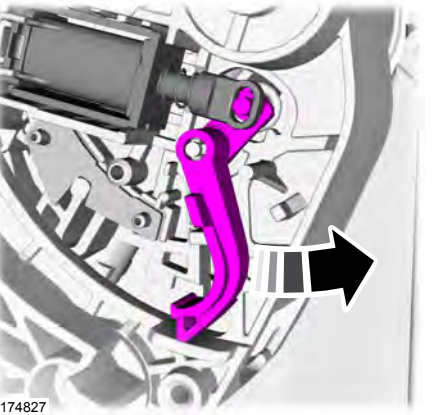


E174826

2. Using a screwdriver, remove the gearshift lever housing cover.


E142627

3. Locate the white lever, situated on the left hand side of the gearshift lever.


E174827

4. Move the white lever toward the rear of the vehicle and move the gearshift lever out of park (P) and into neutral (N).
5. Replace the gearshift lever housing cover, apply the brake pedal, switch the ignition on and release the parking brake.

Note: *See an authorized dealer as soon as possible.*

Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning

This feature may increase durability and provide consistent shift feel over the life of your vehicle. A new vehicle or transmission may have firm shifts, soft shifts or both. This operation is considered normal and does not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process fully updates transmission operation.

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

Note: *Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.*

Note: *Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.*

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern.

Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

HILL START ASSIST

WARNINGS

The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake and move the transmission selector lever into position **P** (Park).

You must remain in your vehicle once you have turned the system on.

During all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

If the engine is revved excessively or if a malfunction is detected, the system will turn off.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system is active, your vehicle will remain stationary on the slope for two to three seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows you time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The brakes are released automatically once the engine has developed sufficient drive to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, (for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space).

The system will turn on automatically on any slope which can result in significant vehicle rollback.

Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed.
2. If the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope, the system will turn on automatically.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle will remain on the slope without rolling away for approximately two or three seconds. This hold time will automatically be extended if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Drive off in the normal manner. The brakes will be released automatically.

Switching the System On and Off

Note: *You can only switch the system on and off if your vehicle has a manual transmission.*

Note: *The system will remain on or off depending on how it was last set.*

Your vehicle comes with this feature already enabled. If required, you can switch this feature off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 66).

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

This system is a proactive system. It has the ability to anticipate wheel slip and transfer torque to the rear wheels before slip occurs. Even when wheel slip is not present, the system is continuously making adjustments to the torque distribution, in an attempt to improve straight line and cornering behavior, both on and off road.

The system automatically turns on every time you switch the ignition on.

All components of the system are sealed and do not require maintenance.

USING FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE

Note: *When a system malfunction is present, a warning message will be displayed in the information display. See* ***Information Messages*** *(page 72). This means the system is not functioning correctly and has defaulted to front-wheel drive only. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.*

Note: *A message will be displayed in the information display when the system overheats and switches to front-wheel drive. This condition may occur if you operate your vehicle in extreme high load conditions or with excessive wheel slip, (i.e. deep sand). To resume four-wheel drive function as soon as possible, stop your vehicle in a safe location and switch the ignition off. After the system cools and normal four-wheel drive functionality resumes, a message will be displayed for approximately five seconds.*

Note: *If a warning message appears in the information display when using the spare tire, it should turn off after reinstalling the repaired or replaced road tire and you switch the ignition on.*

Note: *It is recommended that you reinstall the repaired tire or replace the tire as soon as possible. Major dissimilar tire sizes between the front and rear axles could cause system damage or default the system to front-wheel drive.*

The system gives your vehicle some limited off-road capabilities. Operating your vehicle in conditions other than moderate sand, snow, mud or rough roads could subject it to excessive stress and heat which could result in system damage. This will not be covered by your vehicle warranty.



E142669

A graphic will be displayed in the information display to advise you of the power distribution between the front and rear wheels. The more the area is filled the more power is being distributed to that wheel.

Driving in Special Conditions With Four-Wheel Drive

Four-wheel drive vehicles are suitable for driving on sand, snow, mud and rough roads and have operating characteristics that are somewhat different from conventional vehicles, both on and off the freeway.

Note: *It may be useful to switch Traction control off. This allows for more wheel spin and engine torque in certain off road conditions or if your vehicle becomes stuck.*

When driving at slow speeds off road under high load conditions, use a low gear when possible. Low gear operation will maximize the engine and transmission cooling capability.

Under severe operating conditions, the air conditioning may cycle on and off to prevent the engine from overheating.

Basic Operating Principles

- Drive slower in strong crosswinds which can affect the normal steering characteristics of your vehicle.
- When driving your vehicle on surfaces made slippery by loose sand, water, gravel, snow or ice proceed with care.

If Your Vehicle leaves the Road

If your vehicle leaves the road, reduce your vehicle speed and avoid severe braking. When your vehicle speed has been reduced ease your vehicle back onto the road. Do not turn the steering wheel sharply while returning your vehicle to the road.

It may be safer to stay on the shoulder of the road and slow down gradually before returning to the road. You may lose control if you do not slow down or if you turn the steering wheel too sharply or abruptly.

It may be less risky to strike small objects, such as freeway reflectors, with minor damage to your vehicle rather than attempt a sudden return to the road which could cause your vehicle to slide sideways out of control or roll over. Remember, your safety and the safety of others should be your primary concern.

Emergency Maneuvers

In an unavoidable emergency situation where a sudden sharp turn must be made, remember to avoid over-driving your vehicle (i.e. turn the steering wheel only as rapidly and as far as required to avoid the emergency). Excessive steering can result in loss of vehicle control. Apply smooth pressure to the accelerator pedal or brake pedal when changes in vehicle speed are required. Avoid abrupt steering, acceleration and braking. This could result in an increased risk of vehicle roll over, loss of vehicle control and personal injury. Use all available road surface to bring your vehicle to a safe direction of travel.

In the event of an emergency stop, avoid skidding the tires and do not attempt any sharp steering wheel movements.

If your vehicle goes from one type of surface to another (i.e. from concrete to gravel) there will be a change in the way your vehicle responds to a maneuver (i.e. steering, acceleration or braking).

Sand

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Avoid reducing the tire pressures but shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid excessive wheel slip.

Do not drive your vehicle in deep sand for an extended period of time. This will cause the system to overheat. A message will be displayed in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 72).

To resume operation, switch the ignition off and allow the system to cool down for a minimum of 15 minutes. After the system has cooled down, a message will be displayed briefly in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 72).

When driving at slow speeds in deep sand under high outside temperatures, use a low gear when possible. Low gear operation will maximize the engine and transmission cooling capability.

Avoid driving at excessive speeds, this causes vehicle momentum to work against you and your vehicle could become stuck to the point that assistance may be required from another vehicle. Remember, you may be able to back out the way you came if you proceed with caution.

Mud and Water

Mud

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even four-wheel drive vehicles can lose traction in slick mud. If your vehicle does slide, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess mud stuck on tires and rotating driveshafts can cause an imbalance that could damage drive components.

Water

If you must drive through high water, drive slowly. Traction or brake capability may be limited.

When driving through water, determine the depth and avoid water higher than the bottom of the wheel rims. If the ignition system gets wet, your vehicle may stall.

Once through water, always try the brakes. Wet brakes do not stop your vehicle as effectively as dry brakes. Drying can be improved by applying light pressure to the brake pedal while moving slowly.

Note: *Driving through deep water may damage the transmission. If the front or rear axle is submerged in water, the axle lubricant and power transfer unit lubricant should be checked and changed if necessary.*

Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain

Although natural obstacles may make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should always try to drive straight up or straight down.

Note: *Avoid turning on steep slopes or hills. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possible vehicle roll over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you will use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.*

When climbing a steep slope or hill, start in a lower gear rather than downshifting to a lower gear from a higher gear once the ascent has started. This reduces strain on the engine and the possibility of stalling.

If your vehicle stalls, do not try to turn around because this could cause vehicle roll over. It is better to reverse back to a safe location.

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power will cause the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, resulting in loss of vehicle control.


E143949

Descend a hill in the same gear you would use to climb up the hill to avoid excessive brake application and brake overheating. Do not descend in neutral. Disengage overdrive or move the transmission selector lever to a lower gear. When descending a steep hill, avoid sudden hard braking as you could lose control. The front wheels have to be turning in order to steer your vehicle.

Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, therefore apply the brakes steadily. Do not pump the brake pedal.

Driving on Snow and Ice

WARNING

If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

Note: *Excessive tire slippage can cause transmission damage.*

Four-wheel drive vehicles have advantages over two-wheel drive vehicles in snow and ice but can skid like any other vehicle. Should you start to slide while driving on snowy or icy roads, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

Avoid sudden applications of power and quick changes of direction on snow and ice. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a full stop.

Avoid sudden braking. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice, it will not stop any faster as braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident as to road conditions.

Make sure you allow sufficient distance between you and other vehicles for stopping. Drive slower than usual and consider using one of the lower gears. In emergency stopping situations, apply the brake steadily. As your vehicle has a four wheel anti-lock brake system, do not pump the brake pedal. See **Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes** (page 129).

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

Note: *Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature, damage to the transmission may occur.*

Note: *Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute, damage to the transmission and tires may occur or the engine may overheat.*

Maintenance and Modifications

The suspension and steering systems on your vehicle have been designed and tested to provide predictable performance whether loaded or empty. For this reason, we strongly recommend that you do not make modifications such as adding or removing parts (i.e. lift kits or stabilizer bars) or by using replacement parts not equivalent to the original factory equipment.

We recommend that you use caution when your vehicle has either a high load or device (i.e. ladder or luggage racks). Any modifications to your vehicle that raise the center of gravity may cause your vehicle to roll over when there is a loss of vehicle control.

Failure to maintain your vehicle correctly may void the warranty, increase your repair cost, reduce vehicle performance and operational capabilities and adversely affect you and your passenger's safety. We recommend you frequently inspect your vehicle's chassis components when your vehicle is subject to off road usage.

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out. If your vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.*

Note: *Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear. See* ***Cleaning the Wheels*** *(page 205).*

Note: *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this the hazard warning flashers may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.*

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Shift the transmission to park (P) (automatic transmission) or to a low gear (manual transmission), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal and the area around it for any items or debris that may be obstructing its movement. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the dealer for service.

Brake Assist

Brake assist detects when you brake heavily by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal. Brake assist can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

Anti-lock Brake System (If Equipped)

This system helps you maintain steering control and vehicle stability during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.

HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

Note: *When the system is operating, the brake pedal may pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.*

The anti-lock braking system will not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.

- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

PARKING BRAKE

WARNING

Always set the parking brake fully and make sure you shift the gearshift lever to park (P). Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

Note: *Do not press the release button while pulling the lever up.*

To apply the parking brake:

1. Press the foot brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the parking brake lever up to its fullest extent.

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, shift the gearshift lever to park (P) and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.*

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, shift the gearshift lever to park (P) and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.*

To release the parking brake:

1. Press the brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the lever up slightly.
3. Press the release button and push the lever down.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

USING TRACTION CONTROL

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.

Switching the System Off and On Using the Information Display Controls

If required, you can switch this feature off using the information display controls. See **General Information** (page 66).

Switching the System Off Using the Switch (If Equipped)

The location of the switch is on the instrument panel.

Press the switch. You will see a message in conjunction with an illuminated icon in the display. Press the switch again to return the system to normal mode.

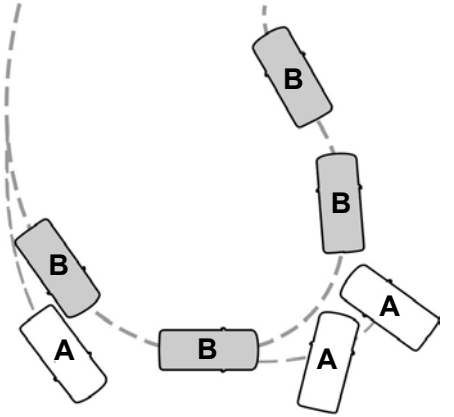
PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Electronic Stability Program

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

Note: *Electronic Stability Program (ESP) is also known as Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) or Electronic Stability Control (ESC).*



E72903

A Without ESP
B With ESP

The system supports stability when your vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path. This is performed by braking individual wheels and reducing engine torque as needed.

The system also provides an enhanced traction control function by reducing engine torque if the wheels spin when you accelerate. This improves your ability to pull away on slippery roads or loose surfaces, and improves comfort by limiting wheel spin in hairpin bends.

Stability Control Warning Lamp

While driving, it flashes when the system is operating. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 61).

USING STABILITY CONTROL

Note: *The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.*

You can switch the traction control system off and on . See **Using Traction Control** (page 131).

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

To help avoid personal injury, please read and understand the limitations of the system as contained in this section. Sensing is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving on a flat surface at parking speeds. Certain objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves, surrounding vehicle's parking aid systems, traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, and external motors and fans may also affect the function of the sensing system. This may include reduced performance or a false activation.

Always drive with due care and attention when using and operating the controls and features on your vehicle.

Only use the Ford approved trailer wiring kit (including the trailer wiring module) when towing with your vehicle. Using generic trailer wiring kits may prevent the correct operation of the rear parking sensors (where fitted) and could damage the electrical systems of your vehicle.

The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.

The parking aid system may not prevent contact with small or moving objects that are close to the ground. The parking aid system gives an audible warning when it detects a large object helping to avoid damage to your vehicle. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

Note: *If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the sensors briefly from a distance not less than 20 cm.*

Note: *If your vehicle has a tow ball arm, the system is turned off automatically when trailer lamps (or lighting boards) are connected to the 13-pin socket through a Ford approved trailer tow module.*

Note: *Keep the sensors free from dirt, ice or snow. Do not clean with sharp objects.*

Note: *The system may emit false alerts if it detects a signal using the same frequency as the sensors or if your vehicle is fully loaded.*

Note: *The outer sensors may detect the side walls of a garage. If the distance between the outer sensors and the side wall remains constant for three seconds, the alert will turn off. As you continue the inner sensors will detect objects directly behind your vehicle.*

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measure of obstacles or false alerts.*

PARKING AID

WARNINGS

To help avoid personal injury, read and understand the limitations of the system as contained in this section. Sensing is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving in reverse on a flat surface at parking speeds. Traffic control systems, inclement weather, air brakes and external motors and fans may also affect the function of the sensing system; this may include reduced performance or a false activation.

To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse and when using the sensing system.

WARNINGS

This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist you in detecting large stationary objects to avoid damaging your vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.

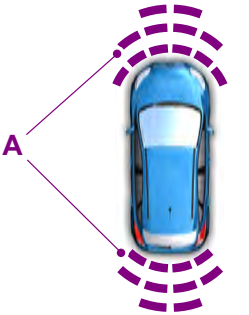
Certain add-on devices such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks and any device that may block the normal detection zone of the system, may create false beeps.

Note: *Keep the sensors located on the bumper or fascia free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false beeps.*

The system warns you of obstacles within a certain range of the bumper area. The system turns on automatically whenever you switch the ignition on. It becomes active when you press the parking aid button or move the transmission selector lever to reverse gear and your vehicle speed is below 8 mph (12 km/h).

When receiving a detection warning, the radio volume is reduced to a predetermined level. After the warning goes away, the radio volume returns to the previous level.



E130382

A Coverage area of up to 31 inches (80 centimeters) from the front of your vehicle, up to 72 inches (183 centimeters) from the rear bumper and about 6–14 inches (15–35 centimeters) to the side of the front end of your vehicle.

The system sounds an audible warning when obstacles are near either bumper in the following manner:

- Objects detected by the front sensors are indicated by a high-pitched tone from the front speakers.
- Objects detected by the rear sensors are indicated by a lower pitched tone from the rear speakers. As your vehicle moves closer to the obstacle, the rate of the audible warning increases.
- The sensing system reports the obstacle which is closest to the front or rear of your vehicle. For example, if an obstacle is 24 inches (60 centimeters) from the front of your vehicle and at the same time, an obstacle is only 16 inches (40 centimeters) from the rear of your vehicle, the lower pitched tone sounds.

- An alternating warning sounds from the front and rear if there are objects at both bumpers that are closer than 12 inches (30 centimeters).
- If a stationary or receding object is detected further than 12 inches (30 centimeters) from the side of your vehicle, the tone sounds for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the warning sounds again.

The system detects certain objects when the transmission selector lever is in reverse:

- and your vehicle is moving toward a stationary object at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less
- but your vehicle is not moving, and a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less
- and your vehicle is moving at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h) and a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h).

Press the button to switch the system off. It will remain off for the entire ignition cycle. For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 9).

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.

You must observe that the selected space remains clear of obstructions at all times in the manoeuver.

WARNINGS

The system may not detect parked vehicles with overhanging loads, street furniture or other items. You must make sure that the selected space is suitable for parking.

Do not use the system if there is an overhanging item attached to your vehicle roof.

Do not use the system if a trailer is attached to your vehicle.

Do not use the system if a bike rack is attached to the back of your vehicle.

If interrupted before the manoeuvre is completed, the system will turn off. The steering wheel position will not indicate the true position of the steering and you will have to take control of your vehicle.

Make sure that your hands, arms and loose clothing do not get caught in the rotating steering wheel.

Note: *After a tire change the system will go through a relearning procedure. During this time the system performance may deteriorate.*

The system will detect a suitable parallel parking space and steer your vehicle into the space. The system controls the steering while you control the accelerator, transmission and brakes. You can stop the manoeuvre at any time by holding the steering wheel or pressing the active park assist switch. See **At a Glance** (page 9).

The system will visually and audibly instruct you throughout the manoeuvre to safely park your vehicle.

Escape/Kuga (CBS) Australia, Vehicles Built From: 08-09-2014, TF 19A321 AD enAUS

Using the System

Note: *The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.*

Note: *The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves.*

Note: *The sensors may not detect the curb.*

Note: *If the traction control system is disabled active park assist will not be available.*

The system may not align your vehicle correctly if:

- a spare tire or a significantly worn tire more than the other tires is used
- you use a tire size not recommended by us
- the tires skid
- the weather conditions are poor (heavy rain, snow, fog, etc).

Move forward at a maximum speed of 22 mph (35 km/h) and keep a passing distance between 1.3 - 6.6 feet (0.4 - 2 meters) to the parked vehicles or objects. Press the active park assist switch. See **At a Glance** (page 9). Use the direction indicator to select searching either to the left-hand side or right-hand side of your vehicle.

Note: *If you do not make a selection the system will default to the passenger's side.*

Note: *The system will not offer a suitable parking space if it does not detect a safe distance to the other object. For example, vehicles parked too close on the opposite side.*


E130107

Note: *You can disable the chimes using the information display. See **Personalized Settings** (page 72).*

The information and entertainment display will inform you and a chime will be heard when a suitable space is found. To park your vehicle, follow the instructions on the information and entertainment display.

Note: *The arrow symbols or graphics in the display indicate on which side of your vehicle the system will park. The display will also advise you when to select reverse gear.*

Slow down and stop at approximately position **A**, then follow the system instructions.


E130108



WARNING

You must take full control of your vehicle when the speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h) as the system is disabled.

Cautiously move your vehicle backward using the accelerator and brake pedals. Parking aid warning tones will sound. Stop your vehicle when you hear a continuous tone.

You can take control of the manoeuvre by holding the steering wheel. If a message appears in the display, press the active park assist switch to resume. See **At a Glance** (page 9).

Move your vehicle forward. Stop your vehicle when you hear a continuous tone.

The display will indicate when the system has finished the manoeuvre.

REAR VIEW CAMERA

WARNINGS

The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

WARNINGS

Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

Back up as slow as possible since higher speeds might limit your reaction time to stop your vehicle.

Use caution when using the rear video camera and the luggage compartment door is ajar. If the luggage compartment door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image may be incorrect. All guidelines disappear when the luggage compartment door is ajar.

Use caution when turning camera features on or off. Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

The rear view camera system provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

During operation, lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's path and proximity to objects behind your vehicle.



E142435

The camera is located on the luggage compartment door.

Using the Rear View Camera System

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you place the transmission in reverse (R).

Note: *The reverse sensing system is not effective at speeds above 12 km/h and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.*

The system uses three types of guides to help you see what is behind your vehicle:

- Active guidelines: Show the intended path of your vehicle when reversing.
- Fixed guidelines: Show the actual path your vehicle is moving in while reversing in a straight line. This can be helpful when backing into a parking space or aligning your vehicle with another object behind you.
- Centerline: Helps align the center of your vehicle with an object (for example, a trailer).

Note: *If the transmission is in reverse (R) and the luggage compartment is ajar, no rear view camera features display.*

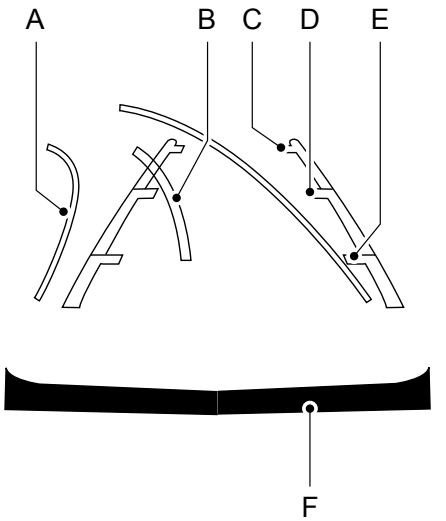
Note: *When towing, the camera only sees what is towed behind your vehicle. This might not provide adequate coverage as it usually provides in normal operation and some objects might not be seen. In some vehicles, the guidelines may disappear once the trailer tow connector is engaged.*

The camera may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if one or both reverse lamps are not operating.
- Mud, water or debris obstructs the camera's view. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The rear of your vehicle is hit or damaged, causing the camera to become misaligned.

Camera Guidelines

Note: *Active guidelines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*



E142436

A	Active guidelines
B	Centerline
C	Fixed guideline: Green zone
D	Fixed guideline: Yellow zone
E	Fixed guideline: Red zone
F	Rear bumper

Active guidelines only show with fixed guidelines. To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guidelines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Always use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

Manual Zoom

WARNING

When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Note: *Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

Note: *When you enable manual zoom, only the centerline is shown.*

Selectable settings for this feature are Zoom in (+) and Zoom out (-). Press the symbol in the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is Zoom OFF.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R).

Camera System Settings

To access any of the rear view camera system settings, make the following selections in the multifunctional display when the transmission is not in reverse (R):

- With Touch Screen: Settings > Vehicle > Camera Settings
- Without Touch Screen: Menu > Camera Settings

Enhanced Park Aids or Park Pilot (If Equipped)

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

The system uses red, yellow and green highlights that appear on top of the video image when any of the sensing systems detect an object.

Rear Camera Delay

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

The default setting for the rear camera delay is OFF.

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P), the camera image remains in the display until:

- Your vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift your vehicle into park (P).

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. You can use cruise control when your vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h.

USING CRUISE CONTROL

WARNINGS

Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

Note: *Cruise control disengages if the vehicle speed decreases more than 16 km/h below the set speed when driving uphill.*



E166821

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Cruise Control On

Press and release ***ON***.



The indicator appears in the information display.

Setting the Cruise Speed

1. Drive to desired speed.
2. Press and release ***SET+*** or ***SET-***.
3. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Note: *The indicator will change color.*

Changing the Set Speed

- Press and release ***SET+*** or ***SET-***. When you select km/h as the display measurement in the information display the set speed changes in approximately 1 km/h increments. When you select mph as the display measurement in the information display the set speed changes in approximately 1 km/h increments.
- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press and release ***SET+***.
- Press and hold ***SET+*** or ***SET-***. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.

Canceling the Set Speed

Pull and release ***CAN*** or tap the brake pedal. The set speed does not erase.

Resuming the Set Speed

Pull and release ***RES***.

Switching Cruise Control Off

Note: *You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.*

Press and release ***OFF*** when the system is in stand by mode or switch the ignition off.

USING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

Always pay close attention to changing road conditions when using adaptive cruise control. The system does not replace attentive driving. Failing to pay attention to the road may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

Do not use the adaptive cruise control when entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts or non-vehicular traffic or roads that are winding, slippery, unpaved, or steep slopes.

Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

Do not use adaptive cruise control when towing a trailer that has trailer brakes. The auto-brake component of the adaptive cruise control system does not operate the trailer brakes. Using adaptive cruise control when towing a trailer that has trailer brakes may result in the loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

Adaptive cruise control may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h.

Adaptive cruise control is not a crash warning or avoidance system.

Adaptive cruise control does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

Adaptive cruise control does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

WARNINGS

Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

Note: *It is your responsibility to stay alert, drive safely and be in control of the vehicle at all times.*

The system adjusts your vehicle speed to maintain the set gap between you and the vehicle in front of you in the same lane. The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front.

The system uses a radar sensor which projects a beam directly in front of your vehicle.



E157482

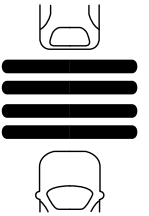
The adaptive cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On

Press and release ***ON***.



The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

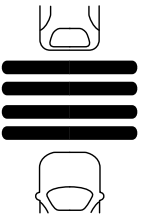


E164805

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed

Note: *When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the information display.*

1. Drive to desired speed.
2. Press and release ***SET+*** or ***SET-***.
3. A green indicator light, the current gap setting and your set speed appear in the information display.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.



E164805

5. A vehicle graphic illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

Following a Vehicle

WARNINGS

When following a vehicle, your vehicle does not decelerate automatically to a stop, nor does your vehicle always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Always apply the brakes when necessary. Failing to do so may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

Adaptive cruise control only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. You should always apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to do so may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance. A vehicle graphic illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of your lane or out of view.
- The vehicle speed falls below 20 km/h.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front. The system limits the maximum braking it can apply. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level will not be sufficient, an audible warning sounds when the system continues to brake. A red warning bar displays on the windshield and you must take immediate action.

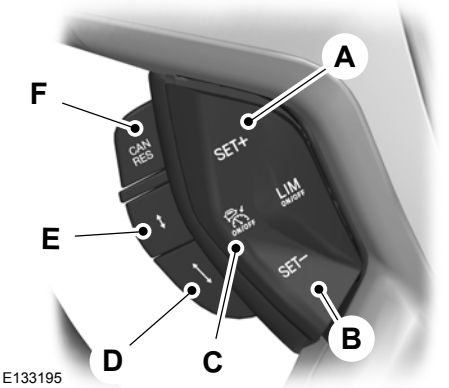
Note: *The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.*

Setting the Gap Distance

Note: *The gap setting is time dependent and therefore the distance automatically adjusts with your speed.*

Note: *It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.*

You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front by pressing the gap control.



A Set speed increase.

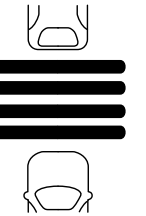
B Set speed decrease.

C On and off.

D Gap increase.

E Gap decrease.

F Cancel and resume.



The selected gap appears in the information display as shown by the bars in the image. You can select four gap settings.

Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Set speed km/h	Graphic display, bars indicated between vehicles	Time gap, seconds	Gap m	Dynamic behavior
100	1	1	28	Sport
100	2	1.4	39	Normal
100	3	1.8	50	Normal
100	4	2.2	61	Comfort

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.

Overriding the Set Speed

WARNING

If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

When you override the system, the green indicator light illuminates and the vehicle graphic does not appear in the information display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a slower speed if following a slower vehicle.

Changing the Set Speed

- Press and release ***SET+*** or ***SET-***. When you select km/h as the display measurement in the information display the set speed changes in approximately 10 km/h increments. When you select mph as the display measurement in the information display the set speed changes in approximately 10 km/h increments.
- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press and release ***SET-***.
- Press and hold ***SET+*** or ***SET-*** until the desired set speed shows on the information display. The vehicle speed will gradually change to the selected speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

Canceling the Set Speed

Note: *If you press the clutch pedal for an extended period, this action also cancels the set speed.*

Press and release ***CAN*** or tap the brake pedal. The set speed does not erase.

Resuming the Set Speed

Note: *Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.*

Press and release ***RES***. Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off

Note: *You erase the set speed and gap setting when you switch the system off.*

Press and release ***OFF*** when the system is in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

Automatic Cancellation

Note: *If the engine speed drops too low a message appears in the information display. Shift to a lower gear (manual transmission only) to avoid automatic cancellation.*

Note: *The system will not operate when traction control is off.*

The system is dependent on various other systems, for example anti-lock braking system and electronic stability program. When a safety system has a malfunction or is reacting to an emergency, the system will automatically switch off.

The system does not operate below 20 km/h. An audible warning sounds and the automatic braking releases if the vehicle drops below this speed.

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- Your vehicle speed falls below approximately 25 km/h.
- The tires lose traction.
- The brake temperature is too high, for example when driving on mountainous or hilly roads.
- The engine speed is too low.
- The radar sensor is covered.
- You apply the parking brake.

Hilly Condition Usage

Note: *An audible alarm sounds and the system shuts down if it is applying brakes for an extended period of time. This allows the brakes to cool. The system functions normally again when the brakes cool.*

Select a lower gear during prolonged downhill driving on steep slopes, such as mountainous areas, when the system is active. In such situations, the system needs additional engine braking to reduce the load on the vehicle's regular brake system to prevent the brakes from overheating.

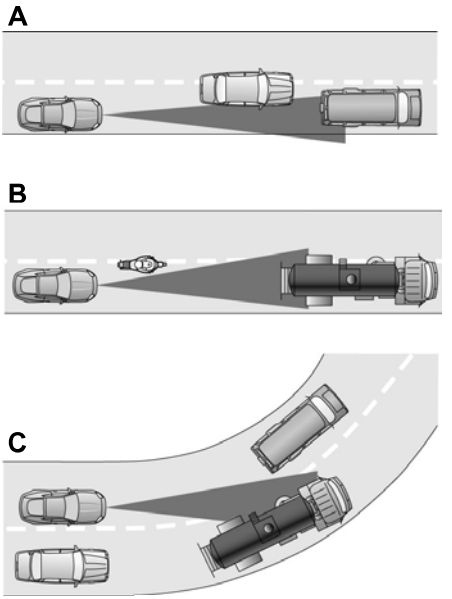
Detection Issues

WARNINGS

On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle graphic does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.



E71621

Detection issues can occur:

A When driving on a different line than the vehicle in front.

B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.

C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

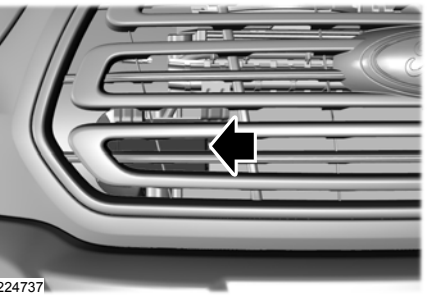
If something hits the front of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detections.

System Not Available

Conditions that can cause the system to deactivate or prevent the system from activating when requested include:

- A blocked sensor.
- High brake temperature.
- A failure in the system or a related system.

Blocked Sensor


E224737

Note: *You cannot see the sensor, it is behind a fascia panel.*

A message displays if something obstructs the radar signals from the sensor. The sensor is in the lower grille. The system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function when something blocks the sensor.

Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors and aftermarket lights may also block the sensor.

The following table lists possible causes and actions for this message displaying.

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.
The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait a short time, it may take several minutes for the radar to detect that it is free from obstruction.
Heavy rain or snow is interfering with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.
Water, snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.

Due to the nature of radar technology, it is possible to get a blockage warning with no actual block. This happens, for example, when driving in sparse rural or desert environments. A false blocked condition either self clears or clears after a you restart your vehicle.

Forward Alert Function

Note: *The brake support system only reduces the crash speed if you brake immediately once alerted.*

Note: *The system only reacts to vehicles in front of you traveling in the same direction and will not react to slow or stationary vehicles.*

Note: *If you depress the brake pedal quick enough, you will maintain full braking. This is regardless of how much force you apply to the pedal.*

Note: *You may notice a slight jerk when the system applies the brakes.*

Note: *Crash alerts only occur when you switch the system on. Brake support is always on and you cannot switch it off.*

The system alerts you by warning tones and a visual warning in the information display. The system assists you by warning you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

Brake support turns on to reduce the severity of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

You can use the system with the adaptive cruise control system on.

Adjusting the Warning Sensitivity

This determines how early the system alerts you. You can adjust the sensitivity using the steering wheel controls. See **General Information** (page 66).

Switching to Normal Cruise Control

WARNING

Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

You can manually change from adaptive cruise control to normal cruise control through the information display.

The cruise control indicator light replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator light if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting does not display, the system does not automatically respond to lead vehicles. Automatic braking remains active to maintain set speed.

SPEED LIMITER

Principle of Operation

WARNING

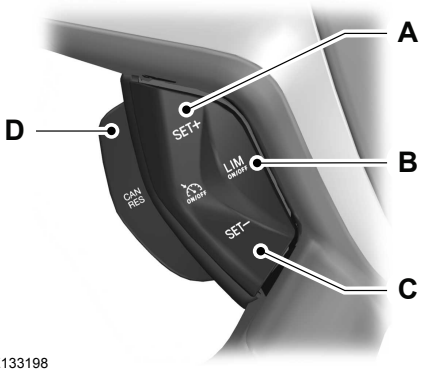
When you are going downhill, your speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning will be given.

The system allows you to set a speed, to which your vehicle then becomes limited. The set speed will become the effective maximum speed of your vehicle, but with the option to temporarily exceed this limit if required.

Using the System

Note: *The set speed limit can be intentionally exceeded for a short period of time if required, for example when overtaking.*

The system is operated by adjustment controls mounted on the steering wheel.



E133198

A Set speed increase
B On and off
C Set speed decrease
D Cancel and resume

Switching the System On and Off

Press switch B. The information display will prompt you to set a speed.

Setting the Speed Limit

Use the cruise control switches to alter the maximum speed setting.

Press switch A or C to select your desired speed limit. The speed is displayed in the information display and stored as the set speed.

Pull switch D to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The information display will confirm this has been turned off by showing the set speed crossed out.

Pull switch D again to resume the limiter. The information display will confirm this has been turned on by showing the set speed again.

Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit

Depress the accelerator fully to temporarily turn the system off. The system will turn on once your vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

System Warnings

If you accidently exceed the set speed, it will flash in the information display and you will hear and audible warning chime.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, it will flash in the information display.

DRIVER ALERT (If Equipped)

Principle of Operation

WARNINGS

The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.

Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

Note: *Keep the windshield free from obstructions for example bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.*

Note: *The system assists you when driving on fast main roads and freeways.*

Note: *The system calculates an alertness level at vehicle speeds above approximately 65 km/h.*

The system automatically monitors your driving behavior.

The system is designed to alert you if it detects that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

Using Driver Alert

Switching the System On and Off

Switch the system on using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 66).

Note: *The system remains on or off depending on how it was last set.*

The system calculates your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors.

System Warnings

Note: *The system does not warn you if the vehicle speed falls below approximately 65 km/h.*

The warning system has two stages:

1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it issues a further warning. This remains in the information display until you cancel it. See **Information Messages** (page 72).

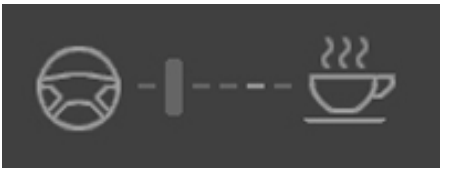
Press **OK** on the steering wheel control to remove the warning.

Escape/Kuga (CBS) Australia, Vehicles Built From: 08-09-2014, TF 19A321 AD enAUS

System Display

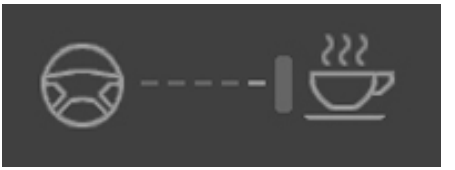
When active the system runs automatically in the background and only issue warnings if required. You can view the status at any time using the information display. See **General Information** (page 66).

The alertness level is shown by six steps as a colored bar.



E131358

Alertness level is fine, no rest required.



E131359

Alertness level is critical, indicating that you should take a rest as soon as it is safe to do so.

The status bar travels from left to right as the calculated alertness level decreases. As the rest icon is approached, the color turns from green to yellow and then finally red when a rest break must be taken.

- Green: No rest required.
- Yellow: First (temporary) warning.
- Red: Second warning.

Your alertness level will be shown in gray if:

- The sensor cannot track the road lane markings.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 65 km/h.

Resetting the System

You can reset the system by:

- Switching the ignition off and on.
- Stopping your vehicle and then opening and closing the driver door.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM (If Equipped)

Lane Keeping Alert

Principle of Operation

WARNINGS

The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNINGS

The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

Note: *Keep the windshield free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.*

Note: *The system may assist you when driving on fast main roads and freeways.*

Note: *The system may not operate during hard braking or acceleration and when you are intentionally steering your vehicle.*

Note: *The system will operate with a minimum of one tracked lane marking.*

Note: *The system will only operate above vehicle speeds of approximately 65 km/h.*

The sensor is located behind the interior mirror. It continuously monitors conditions to alert you of unintentional lane drifting at high speeds.

The system will automatically detect and track the lane markings on the road. If the system detects that your vehicle is unintentionally drifting toward the lane markings, a warning will be shown in the display. There is also a warning given in the form of a vibration felt through the steering wheel.

Using Lane Keeping Alert

Switching the System On and Off

Note: *When you switch the system off, a warning indicator will remain illuminated in the information display. See* ***Warning Lamps and Indicators*** *(page 61).*

Note: *The system status and settings will remain unchanged when you switch the ignition on and off.*



E132099

Switch the system on and off using the button on the direction indicator stalk.

Press the button twice to switch the system on. Press the button once to switch the system off.

Setting the Steering Wheel Vibration Level

The system has three intensity levels which you can set using the information display. See **General Information** (page 66).

Setting the System Sensitivity

You can adjust how quickly the system warns you. The system has two sensitivity levels which you can set using the information display. See **General Information** (page 66).

System Warnings



E132651

A column of lane markings are displayed on either side of the vehicle graphic.

The lane markings are color coded as follows:

- Green: The system is ready to warn you of any unintentional lane departure.
- Red: Your vehicle is approaching or is too close to the detected lane boundary. Take immediate safe action to reposition your vehicle.
- Gray: The relevant lane boundary will be suppressed.

Instances where a lane boundary may be suppressed:

- Lane markings on the road may not be detected by the sensor.
- You turn the direction indicator for that side of your vehicle on.
- If you apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- Your vehicle speed is outside the operating limits.
- If there is an anti-lock brake or stability control intervention.
- Narrow lane width.

If the lane markings in the display turn red or you feel a vibration through the steering wheel you must take immediate and safe action to align your vehicle. Correct any unintended lane drift immediately.

Lane Keeping Aid

Switching the System On and Off

Note: *The system does not automatically turn on every time you switch the ignition on.*

Note: *When you switch the system on, this will automatically turn lane keeping alert on.*



E132099

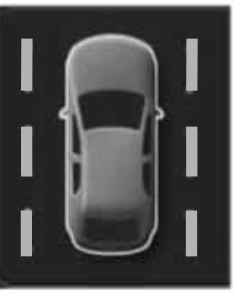
Switch the system on and off using the button on the indicator stalk.

Press the button three times to switch the system on. Press the button again to switch the system off.

Setting the System Sensitivity

You can adjust how quickly the system warns you. The system has two sensitivity levels which you can set using the information display. See **General Information** (page 66).

System Warnings



E132651

A column of lane markings are displayed on either side of the vehicle graphic.

The lane markings are color coded as follows:

- Green: The system is ready to warn you of any unintentional lane departure.
- Yellow: The system will automatically apply a steering torque to align your vehicle path and correct any unintended lane drift.
- Red: Your vehicle is approaching or is too close to the detected lane boundary. The steering wheel will give a vibration warning. Take immediate safe action to reposition your vehicle.

Instances where a lane boundary may be suppressed:

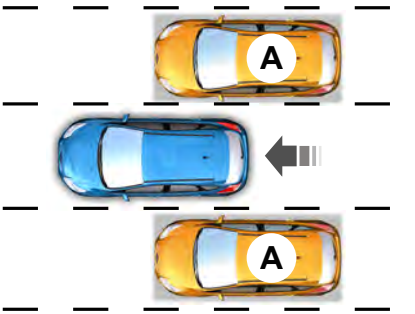
- Lane markings on the road may not be detected by the sensor.
- You turn the direction indicator for that side of your vehicle on.
- If you apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- Your vehicle speed is outside the operating limits.
- If there is an anti-lock brake or stability control intervention.
- Narrow lane width.

Note: *You can override the system at any time during its operation by turning the steering wheel.*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

WARNING

To help avoid injuries, NEVER use the Blind Spot Information System as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The Blind Spot Information System is not a replacement for careful driving.



E124788

The Blind Spot Information System is designed to aid you in detecting vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone (A). The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 4 m beyond the bumper. The system is designed to alert you if certain vehicles enter the blind spot zone while driving.

Note: *The Blind Spot Information System does not prevent contact with other vehicles or objects; nor detect parked vehicles, people, animals or infrastructure (fences, guardrails, trees). It's only designed to alert you to vehicles in the blind spot zones.*

Note: *When a vehicle passes quickly through the blind spot zone, typically fewer than two seconds, the system does not trigger.*

Using the System

The Blind Spot Information System turns on when you start the engine and you drive your vehicle forward above 8 km/h.

For automatic transmissions, the Blind Spot Information System remains on while the transmission is in drive (D). If shifted into reverse (R) or park (P) the Blind Spot Information System turns off. Once shifted back into drive (D), the Blind Spot Information System turns back on when you drive your vehicle above 8 km/h.

For manual transmissions, the Blind Spot Information System is on for all gears except the reverse (R).

Note: *The Blind Spot Information System does not function in reverse (R) or park (P).*

System Lights and Messages



E142442

The Blind Spot Information System illuminates an amber alert indicator in the outside mirror on the side of your vehicle the approaching vehicle is coming from. When the Blind Spot Information System is alerting on a vehicle and the corresponding turn signal is ON, the Blind Spot Information System alert indicator flashes as an increased warning level.

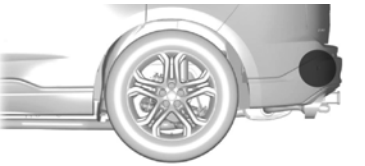
The alert indicator dims when the system detects nighttime darkness.

Note: *The alert indicator flashes in case of an alert and the turn signal is set to that side at the same time.*

System Sensor Blockage

WARNING

To help avoid injuries, NEVER use the Blind Spot Information System as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The Blind Spot Information System is not a replacement for careful driving.



E205199

The system uses radar sensors that are located behind the bumper fascia on each side of your vehicle. Any dirt, mud and snow in front of the sensors and/or driving in heavy rain can cause system degradation. Also, other types of obstructions in front of the sensor can cause system degradation. This is referred to as a 'blocked' condition.

Note: *Do not apply bumper stickers and/or repair compound to these areas, this can cause degraded system performance.*

If the system detects a degraded performance condition, a message warning of a blocked sensor will appear in the information display. Also the BLIS alert indicators will remain ON and BLIS will no longer provide any vehicle warnings. You can clear the information display warning but the alert indicators will remain illuminated.

A "blocked" condition can be cleared in two ways:

- After the blockage in front of the sensors is removed or the rainfall/snowfall rate decreases or stops, drive for a few minutes in traffic to allow the sensors to detect passing vehicles.
- By cycling the ignition from ON to OFF and then back ON.

Note: *If your vehicle has a tow bar with a factory equipped trailer tow module and it is towing a trailer, the sensors will automatically turn the Blind Spot Information System off. If your vehicle has a tow bar but no factory equipped trailer tow module, it is recommended to turn the Blind Spot Information System off manually. Operating the Blind Spot Information System with a trailer attached will cause poor system performance.*

System Errors

If the system senses a problem with the left or right sensor, the telltale will illuminate and a message will appear in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 72).

Switching the System Off and On

You can temporarily switch the Blind Spot Information System off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 66). When the Blind Spot Information System switches off, you will not receive alerts and the information display shows a system off message. The telltale in the cluster also illuminates. When you switch the Blind Spot Information System on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: *The Blind Spot Information System remembers the last selected on or off setting.*

You can also have the Blind Spot Information System switched off permanently at an authorized dealer. Once switched off permanently, the system can only be switched back on at an authorized dealer.

ACTIVE CITY STOP (If Equipped)

Principle of Operation

WARNINGS

You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

To achieve full system performance you must break in the braking system. See **Breaking-In** (page 169). Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

If the system applies the brakes and the engine stops the hazard warning flashers will automatically turn on. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

The system does not react to cyclists, motorcyclists, pedestrians, animals or vehicles that are driving in a different direction. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The system does not operate during harsh acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

WARNINGS

The system may not operate during cold or severe weather conditions. Snow, ice, heavy rain and spray can influence the system. Keep the hood free of snow and ice. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The system may not operate when driving around sharp curves. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

The system may not operate correctly if you replace the windshield with a non-Ford windshield. Do not carry out windshield repairs in front of the sensor. Failure to adhere to this warning may lead to an accident or injury.

The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflections. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The system will not operate correctly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstructions, for example, bird droppings, insects, snow or ice. Failure to adhere to this warning may lead to an accident or injury.

When you switch the ignition on the sensor transmits a laser beam. Never look directly into the sensor. There is a risk of eye injury.

The sensor is on the rear of the interior mirror. It continuously monitors conditions to decide when to intervene.

The system operates at speeds below approximately 50 km/h by applying the brakes if it detects that a crash is likely. If the system applies the brakes a message will appear in the information display.

The system may reduce the risk of a low speed crash into another vehicle. It also helps reduce impact damage or may avoid the crash completely.

Note: *You must depress the brake pedal to obtain full braking force.*

Switching the System Off and On

You can switch this feature off using the information display controls. See **General Information** (page 66).

Note: *The system automatically turns on every time you switch the ignition on.*

In certain situations we recommend that you switch the system off, for example:

- Driving off-road when objects may cover the windshield.
- Driving through a car wash facility.

ECO MODE

This system assists you in driving more efficiently by constantly monitoring characteristics of gear changing, anticipation of traffic conditions and speeds while driving.

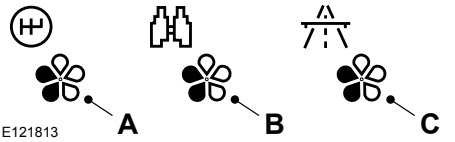
The value of these characteristics is represented by petals shown in the display, with five petals being the most efficient. The more efficiently you drive, the better the rating, and the better your vehicle's overall fuel economy.

Note: *These efficiency values do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure. It might vary as it is not only related to these driving habits, but also influenced by many other factors such as short trips and cold starts.*

Note: *Frequent short trips, where the engine does not fully warm up, will also increase fuel consumption*

The system is accessed using the information display control. See **General Information** (page 66).

Type 1



A Gear shifting
B Anticipation
C Efficient speed

Gear shifting

Use the highest drivable gear appropriate for the road conditions to improve fuel consumption.

Anticipation

Adjust your vehicle speed and the distance to other vehicles to avoid the need for heavy braking or acceleration to improve fuel economy.

Efficient speed

Reduce your cruising speed on open roads to improve economy. Higher speeds use more fuel.

Resetting Eco Mode

Reset the average fuel consumption by using the information display control.

Note: *New values may take a short time to calculate*

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS

Use load securing straps to an approved standard, e.g. DIN.

Make sure that you secure all loose items properly.

Place luggage and other loads as low and as far forward as possible within the luggage or loadspace.

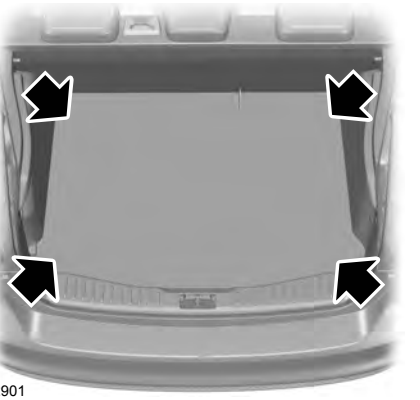
Do not drive with the luggage compartment or rear door open. Exhaust fumes may enter your vehicle.

Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 219).

Do not allow items to contact the rear windows.

Note: *When loading long objects in to your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture be careful not to damage the interior trim.*

LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS



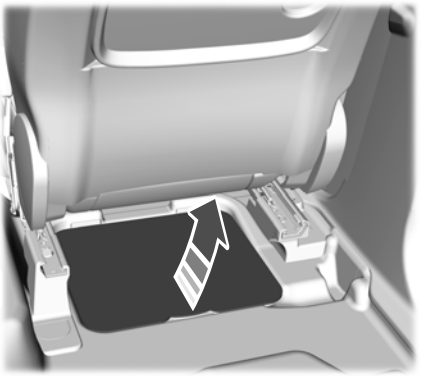
E132901

Luggage Retention Nets

Note: *Your vehicle does not have luggage retention net anchor points fitted behind the first or second row seats.*

REAR UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

Passenger Compartment Floor



E159047

The under floor storage compartment is located behind the front right-hand seat.

Cargo Management System

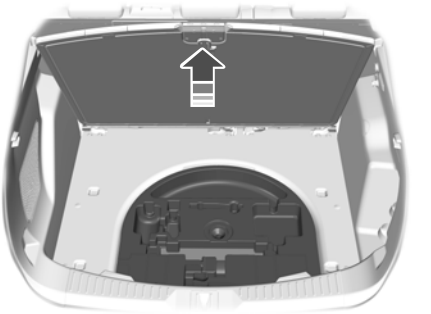
The system is located in the floor of the cargo area. Lift the handle to open.

Vehicles with Temporary Spare Wheel



E159408

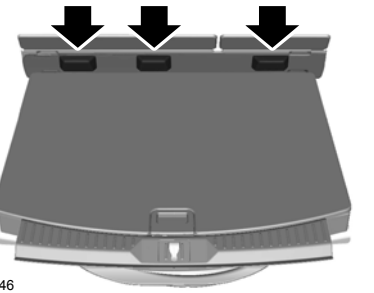
Vehicles with Temporary Mobility Kit



E159043

Adjustable Load Floor

Vehicles with Temporary Spare Wheel



E142446

The front of the load floor can be placed either on (for high position) or below (for low position) the ledges behind the rear seats.

Vehicles with Temporary Mobility Kit

The front of the load floor can be placed either on the ledge behind the rear seats (for high position) or on the black cargo insulator surface (for low position).

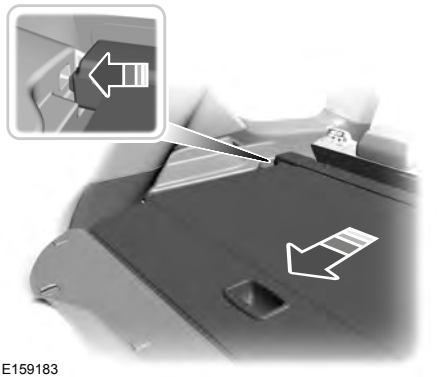
LUGGAGE COVERS

WARNINGS

Make sure that the posts are correctly latched in mounting features. The cover may cause injury in a sudden stop or crash if it is not securely installed.

Do not place any objects on the cargo shade. They may obstruct your vision or strike occupants of your vehicle in a sudden stop or crash.

Use the cargo shade to cover items in the cargo area of your vehicle.



E159183

Insert the ends of the cargo shade into the mounting features located behind the rear seat on the rear trim panels to install the shade.

To operate the cargo shade:

1. Pull the rear edge of the cargo shade rearward until it clicks into place.
2. To close the cargo shade, tap on the rear edge and it will slide forward.

ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS

WARNINGS

If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.

Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.

When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

The maximum recommended load, evenly distributed on the roof rack, is:

- 165 pounds (75 kilograms) for vehicles without a moonroof
- 132 pounds (60 kilograms) for vehicles with a moonroof.

Note: *Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.*

For correct roof rack system function, you must place loads directly on crossbars affixed to the roof rack side rails. When using the roof rack system, we recommend you use Ford Genuine Accessory crossbars designed specifically for your vehicle.

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

TOWING A TRAILER

WARNINGS

Only use the Ford approved trailer wiring kit (including the trailer wiring module) when towing with your vehicle. Using generic trailer wiring kits may prevent the correct operation of the rear parking sensors (where fitted) and could damage the electrical systems of your vehicle.

Aftermarket load levelling kits or weight distribution hitches are not suitable for use on the Ford approved towbar.

Do not exceed the maximum permissible nose weight, e.g. vertical weight on the tow ball. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

Note: *See Information label on the towbar*

Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle(s) of your trailer. If you are towing with an unladen vehicle, the load in your trailer should be placed toward the nose, within the maximum nose load, as this gives the best stability.

The stability of your vehicle to trailer combination is very much dependant on the quality of the trailer.

In high altitude regions above 1,000 m, the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight must be reduced by 10% for every additional 1,000 m.

Note: *The electrical system is not suitable for towing trailers with more than one rear fog lamp.*

Steep Gradients

WARNING

The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

Use a low gear when descending a steep downhill gradient.

TRAILER SWAY CONTROL (If Equipped)

WARNING

Turning off trailer sway control increases the risk of loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death. Ford does not recommend disabling this feature except in situations where speed reduction may be detrimental (such as hill climbing), the driver has significant trailer towing experience, and can control trailer sway and maintain safe operation.

Note: *This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it when it begins.*

Note: *This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.*

Note: *In some cases, if your vehicle speed is too high, the system may turn on multiple times, gradually reducing your vehicle speed.*

The system applies the brakes to the individual wheels and reduces engine torque to aid vehicle stability. If the trailer begins to sway, the stability control warning lamp flashes and a message appears in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 72). Slow your vehicle down, pull safely to the side of the road and check for correct load distribution. See **Load Carrying** (page 160).

You can switch this feature off in the information display. When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically turns on.

RECOMMENDED TOWING WEIGHTS

Note: *Do not exceed the trailer weight for your vehicle configuration listed in the chart below.*

Note: *There are legal limits for maximum towing weights. This may vary according to the region in which your vehicle is operated. Check the local laws and regulations before towing a trailer.*

Powertrain	Transmission	Maximum combined vehicle and trailer weight	Rear axle load limit	Maximum Trailer Weight
1.5L GTDI 2WD	Manual	3,673 kg	1,075 kg	1,500 kg
	Automatic			
1.5L GTDI AWD	Automatic	3,179 kg	1,150 kg	1,600 kg
2.0L GTDI AWD	Automatic	3,179 kg	1,150 kg	1,600 kg
2.0L DW10F AWD	Automatic	3,580 kg	1,150 kg	1,800 kg

ESSENTIAL TOWING CHECKS

Follow these guidelines for safe towing:

- Do not tow a trailer until you drive your vehicle at least 1,600 km.
- Consult your local motor vehicle laws for towing a trailer.
- See the instructions included with towing accessories for the proper installation and adjustment specifications.
- Service your vehicle more frequently if you tow a trailer. See your scheduled maintenance information.
- If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions the rental agency gives you.

Remember to account for the trailer tongue weight as part of your vehicle load when calculating the total vehicle weight.

Hitches

Do not use a hitch that either clamps onto the bumper or attaches to the axle.

It is recommended that you load your trailer so 10% of the trailer weight is on the tow ball. You must not exceed the maximum permissible trailer nose weight. See **Recommended Towing Weights** (page 164).

Safety Chains

Note: *Never attach safety chains to the bumper.*

Always connect the safety chains to the hook retainers of your vehicle hitch.

To connect the safety chains, cross them under the trailer tongue and allow enough slack for turning tight corners. Do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer Brakes

WARNING

Do not connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. Your vehicle may not have enough braking power and your chances of having a collision greatly increase.

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if you install them properly and adjust them to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and federal regulations.

The rating for the tow vehicle's braking system operation is at the gross vehicle weight rating, not the gross combined weight rating.

Separate functioning brake systems are required for safe control of towed vehicles and trailers weighing more than 750 kg **when loaded.**

Trailer Lamps

WARNING

Never connect any trailer lamp wiring to the vehicle's tail lamp wiring; this may damage the electrical system resulting in fire. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for assistance in proper trailer tow wiring installation. Additional electrical equipment may be required.

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working.

Before Towing a Trailer

Practice turning, stopping and backing up to get the feel of your vehicle-trailer combination before starting on a trip. When turning, make wider turns so the trailer wheels clear curbs and other obstacles.

When Towing a Trailer

- Do not make full-throttle starts.
- Check your hitch, electrical connections and trailer wheel lug nuts thoroughly after you have travelled 80 km.
- When stopped in congested or heavy traffic during hot weather, place the gearshift in position **P** to aid engine and transmission cooling and to help A/C performance.
- Turn off the cruise control with heavy loads or in hilly terrain. The cruise control may turn off automatically when you are towing on long, steep grades.
- Shift to a lower gear when driving down a long or steep hill. Do not apply the brakes continuously, as they may overheat and become less effective.
- If your transmission is equipped with a Grade Assist or Tow/Haul feature, use this feature when towing. This provides engine braking and helps eliminate excessive transmission shifting for optimum fuel economy and transmission cooling.
- Allow more distance for stopping with a trailer attached. Anticipate stops and brake gradually.
- Avoid parking on a grade. However, if you must park on a grade:
  - Turn the steering wheel to point your vehicle tires away from traffic flow.
  - Set your vehicle parking brake.
  - Place the automatic transmission in position **P**.
  - Place wheel chocks in front and back of the trailer wheels. (Chocks not included with vehicle.)

Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft (PWC)

Note: *Disconnect the wiring to the trailer **before** backing the trailer into the water.*

Note: *Reconnect the wiring to the trailer **after** the trailer is removed from the water.*

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- Do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- Do not allow waves to break higher than 6 inches (15 centimetres) above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Exceeding these limits may allow water to enter vehicle components:

- Causing internal damage to the components.
- Affecting driveability, emissions, and reliability.

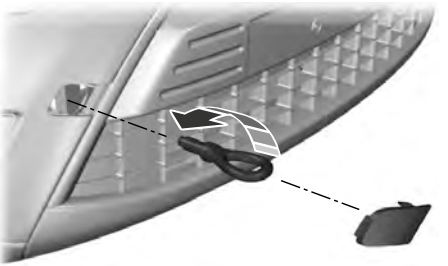
Replace the rear axle lubricant anytime the rear axle has been submerged in water. Water may have contaminated the rear axle lubricant, which is not normally checked or changed unless a leak is suspected or other axle repair is required.

TOWING POINTS

WARNING

The towing eye has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it. Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened.

Front Towing Eye



E99490

Space is provided in the spare wheel well.

You must carry the towing eye in your vehicle at all times.

Remove the cover and install the towing eye.

Rear Towing Eye



E152139

Note: *If your vehicle has a tow bar, you cannot install the towing eye at the rear of your vehicle.*

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

All Vehicles

WARNINGS

You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed.

If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.

The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and be aware of increased stopping distances and heavier steering.

Too much tension in the tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.

Do not use a rigid tow bar on the front towing eye.

When towing your vehicle you must select neutral.

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the towed vehicle.

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

WARNINGS

Do not exceed a speed of 20 km/h and a distance of 20 km unless the drive wheels are lifted clear of the ground.

It is recommended not to tow with the drive wheels on the ground. However, if it is required to move your vehicle from a dangerous location, do not exceed a speed of 20 km/h and a distance of 20 km.

WARNINGS


Do not tow your vehicle backward.


In the event of a mechanical failure of the transmission the drive wheels must be lifted clear of the ground.


Do not tow your vehicle if the ambient temperature is below 0ºC.

BREAKING-IN

Tires

New tires need to be run-in for approximately 500 km. During this time, you may experience different driving characteristics.

Brakes and Clutch

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 150 km in town and for the first 1,500 km on freeways.

Engine

Avoid driving too fast during the first 1,500 km. Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine.

Vehicles With a Diesel Engine

During the first 3,000 km, you may notice a ticking sound when your vehicle slows down. This is due to adjustments of your new diesel engine and is normal.

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below -25ºC.

DRIVING THROUGH WATER

WARNINGS

Drive through water in an emergency only and not as part of normal driving.

Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.

In an emergency, you can drive your vehicle through water to a maximum depth of 8 inches (200 millimeters) and at a maximum speed of 6 mph (10 km/h). You must take extra care when driving through flowing water.

When driving in water, maintain a low speed and do not stop your vehicle. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Depress the brake pedal lightly to check that the brakes are functioning correctly.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that your vehicle's lamps are fully operational.
- Check the power assistance of the steering system.

FLOOR MATS

WARNINGS

Always use floor mats that are designed to fit the foot well of your vehicle. Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed. Only use floor mats that are firmly secured to retention posts so that they cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

Always make sure that the floor mats are properly attached to the retention posts in the carpet that are supplied with your vehicle. Floor mats must be properly secured to both retention posts to make sure mats do not shift out of position.

WARNINGS

Never place floor mats or any other covering in the vehicle foot well that cannot be properly secured to prevent them from moving and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.

Never place floor mats or any other covering on top of already installed floor mats. Floor mats should always rest on top of vehicle carpeting surface and not another floor mat or other covering. Additional floor mats or any other covering will reduce the pedal clearance and potentially interfere with pedal operation.

Check attachment of floor mats on a regular basis. Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning or replacement.

Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while the vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

Failure to properly follow floor mat installation or attachment instructions can potentially cause interference with pedal operation causing a loss of vehicle control.


E142666

To install floor mats, position the floor mat so that the eyelet is over the retention post and press down to lock in.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

HAZARD FLASHERS



The hazard warning button is located on the instrument panel.

Use it when your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

Press the button to turn on the hazard warning function, and the front and rear direction indicators will flash.

Press the button again to turn them off.

Note: *If used when the engine is not running, the battery will lose charge. There may be insufficient power to restart your engine.*

Note: *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the hazard warning flashers may flash if you brake heavily.*

FIRST AID KIT (If Equipped)

Space is provided in the rear underfloor storage compartment. See **Rear Under Floor Storage** (page 161).

WARNING TRIANGLE

Space is provided in the luggage compartment.

FUEL SHUTOFF

WARNING

Failure to inspect and, if necessary, repair fuel leaks after a collision may increase the risk of fire and serious injury. Ford Motor Company recommends that the fuel system be inspected by an authorized dealer after any collision.

In the event of a moderate to severe collision, this vehicle includes a fuel pump shutoff feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shutoff.

Should your vehicle shut off after a collision, you may restart your vehicle. For vehicles equipped with a key system:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 to re-enable the fuel pump.

For vehicles equipped with a push button start system:

1. Press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
2. Press the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch on the ignition.
3. Remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
4. You can either attempt to start the engine by pressing the brake pedal and the **START/STOP** button, or switch on the ignition only by pressing the **START/STOP** button without pressing the brake pedal. Both ways re-enable the fuel system.

Note: *When you try to restart your vehicle after a fuel shutoff, the vehicle makes sure that various systems are safe to restart. Once your vehicle determines that the systems are safe, then the vehicle will allow you to restart.*

Note: *In the event that your vehicle does not restart after your third attempt, contact an authorized dealer.*

Escape/Kuga (CBS) Australia, Vehicles Built From: 08-09-2014, TF 19A321 AD enAUS

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

WARNINGS

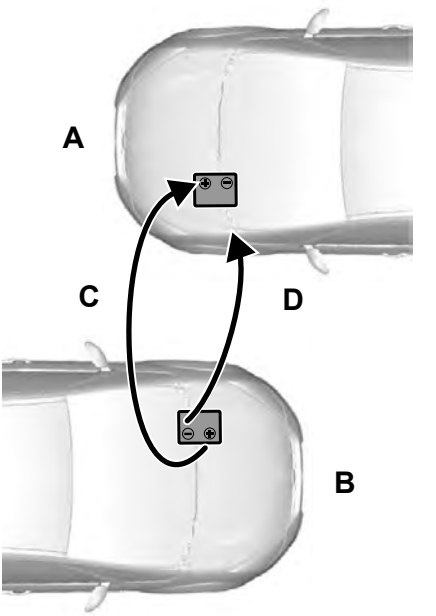
Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

Do not use fuel lines, engine rocker covers, the intake manifold, or hood latch as grounding points.

Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

Note: *Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.*

To Connect the Booster Cables



E102925

A	Flat battery vehicle.
B	Booster battery vehicle.
C	Positive connection cable.
D	Negative connection cable.

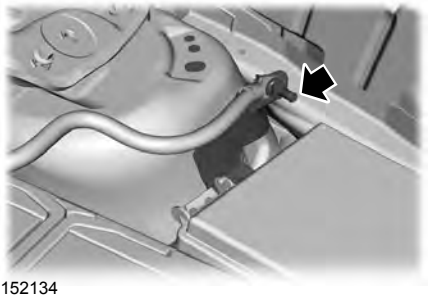
WARNING

Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

1. Switch off the engine and any electrical equipment.

2. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.



E152134

3. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, away from the battery and the fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) cable to a ground connection point if available.

WARNINGS

Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

To Start the Engine

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and rev the engine moderately, or press the accelerator gently to keep your engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

Note: *Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.*

FUSE BOX LOCATIONS

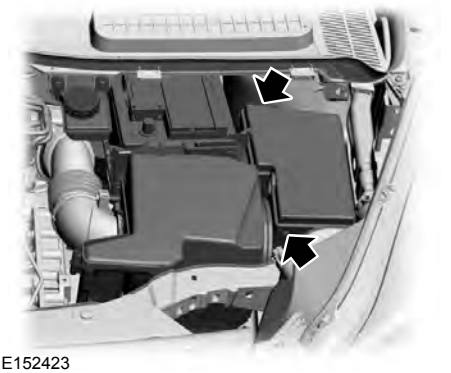
Pre-Fuse Box



E152422

Your vehicle has a pre-fuse box located in the engine compartment attached to the positive battery post. This box contains several high current fuses. If replacement of these high current fuses is required, see an authorized dealer.

Engine Compartment Fuse Box



E152423

WARNINGS

Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

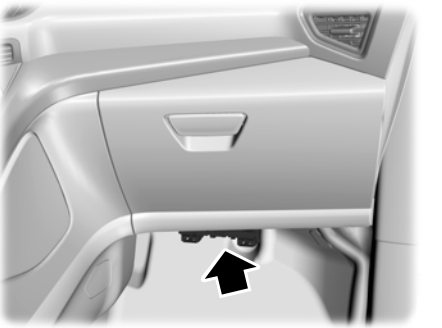
To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the engine compartment fuse box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

The engine compartment fuse box has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

When you disconnect and reconnect the battery, you will need to reset some features. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 194).

Lift the release lever at the rear of the cover to remove it.

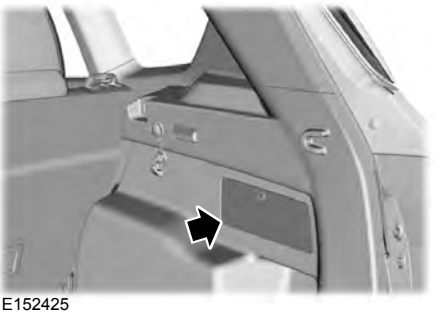
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box



E159113

The fuse box is located below the glove box.

Luggage Compartment Fuse Box

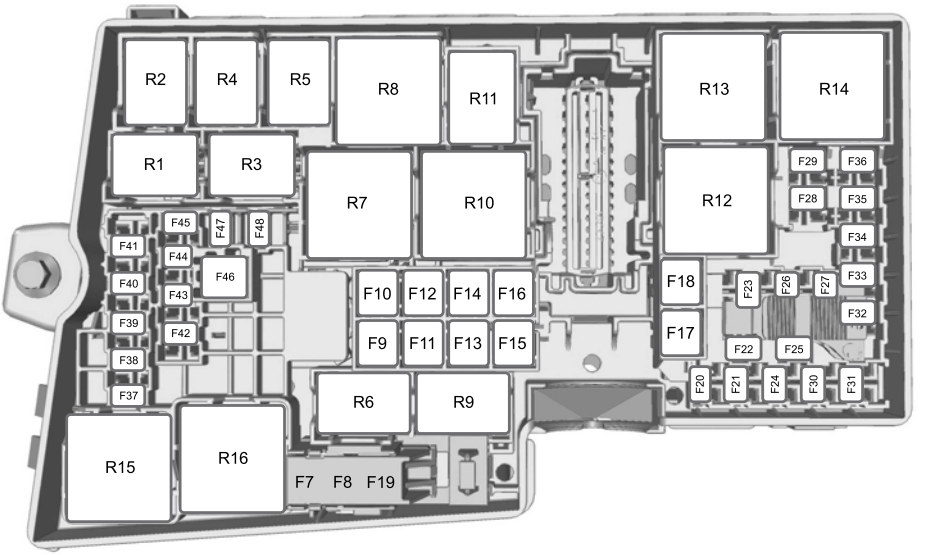


E152425

The fuse box is located in the luggage compartment behind the passenger side wheel well. Remove the fuse panel cover to gain access to the fuses.

FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

Engine Compartment Fuse Box



E157389

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F1	-	Not used.
F2	-	Not used.
F3	-	Not used.
F4	-	Not used.
F5	-	Not used.
F6	-	Not used.
F7	40A**	Anti-lock brake system. Electronic stability program.
F8	30A**	Electronic stability program.
F9	20A**	Headlamp washer.
F10	40A**	Blower motor.
F11	30A**	Voltage quality module. Body control module.
F12	30A**	Powertrain control module.
F13	30A**	Starter relay.
F14	40A**	Right-hand heated windshield element.
F15	20A**	Cigar lighter. Auxiliary power points.
F16	40A**	Left-hand heated windshield element.
F17	20A**	Auxiliary heater.
F18	-	Not used.
F19	5A*	Anti-lock brake system. Electronic stability program.
F20	15A*	Horn.
F21	5A*	Brake lamps.
F22	15A*	Battery monitor system.

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F23	5A*	Relay coils.
F24	5A*	Lighting control.
F25	-	Not used.
F26	5A*	Engine control relay coil feed - vehicles with a gasoline engine.
F26	15A*	Engine control relay coil feed - vehicles with a diesel engine. Transmission control module - vehicles with a diesel engine.
F27	15A*	Air conditioning clutch.
F28	5A*	Adaptive cruise control - vehicles with start-stop.
F29	25A*	Rear window defroster.
F30	-	Not used.
F31	-	Not used.
F32	15A*	Engine control module.
F33	10A*	Engine control module.
F34	10A*	Engine control module.
F35	15A*	Engine control module.
F36	5A*	Active grill shutters.
F37	5A*	Passenger airbag deactivation indicator feed.
F38	5A*	Engine control module . Transmission control module.
F39	5A*	Headlamps. Headlamp leveling.
F40	5A*	Electronic power assist steering.
F41	20A*	Body control module.

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F42	15A*	Rear window wiper.
F43	15A*	Headlamps.
F44	5A*	Adaptive cruise control - vehicles without start-stop.
F45	10A*	Heated washer nozzle.
F46	40A**	Autowipers.
F47	-	Not used.
F48	15A*	Diesel particulate filter vaporizer.

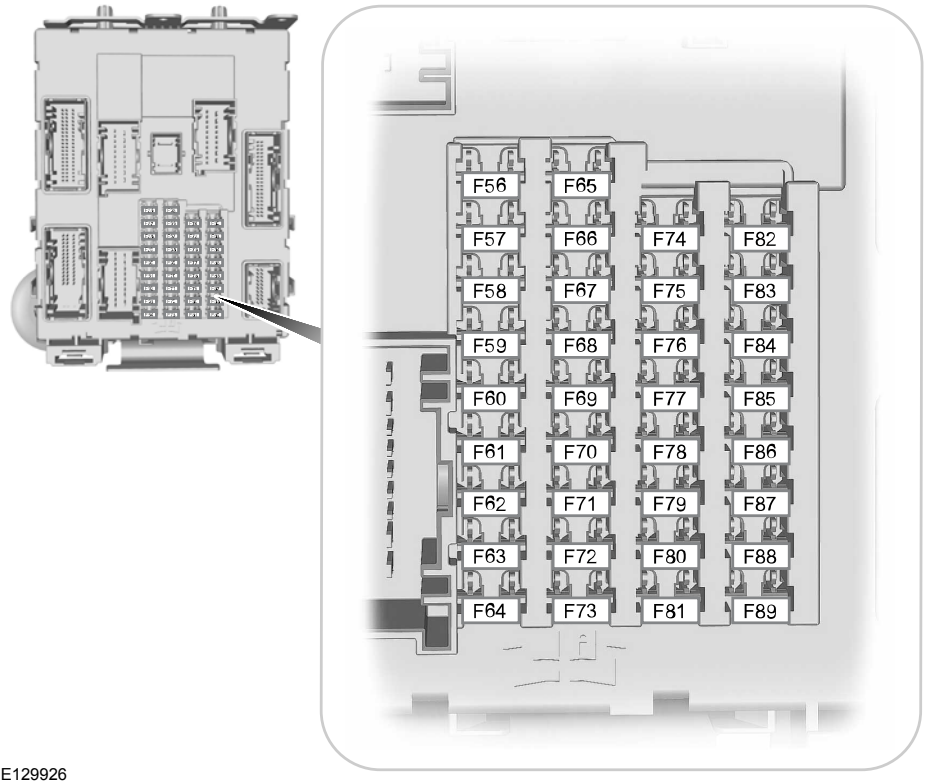
*Mini fuses

**Cartridge fuses

Relay	Circuits switched
R1	Not used.
R2	Horn.
R3	Diesel particulate filter vaporizer.
R4	Not used.
R5	Not used.
R6	Not used.
R7	Heated windshield.
R8	Not used.
R9	Headlamp washer.
R10	Starter motor.
R11	Air conditioning clutch.
R12	Cooling fan.
R13	Blower motor.

Relay	Circuits switched
R14	Engine control module.
R15	Heated rear window.
R16	Ignition.

Passenger Compartment Fuse Box

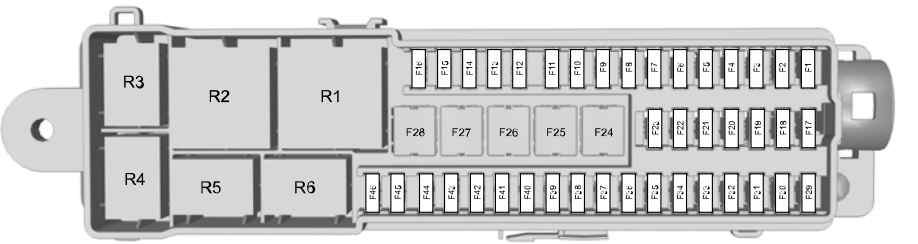


E129926

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F56	20A	Fuel pump.
F57	-	Not used.
F58	-	Not used.
F59	5A	Passive anti-theft transceiver.
F60	10A	Interior lighting. Driver door switch pack. Glove box lamp. Overhead console switch bank.
F61	-	Not used.
F62	5A	Autowipers. Auto-dimming interior mirror.
F63	10A	Adaptive cruise control - front sensing module.
F64	-	Not used.
F65	10A	Liftgate release.
F66	-	Not used.
F67	7.5A	SYNC module. Front control/display interface module. Global positioning system module.
F68	15A	Electric steering column lock.
F69	5A	Instrument cluster.
F70	-	Not used.
F71	10A	Heating control head - manual air conditioning. Duel electronic automatic temperature control.
F72	7.5A	Steering wheel module.
F73	7.5A	Data link connector. Battery backup sounder.
F74	15A	High beam.
F75	15A	Rear fog lamp.
F76	10A	Reversing lamps.
F77	20A	Windshield washer pump.

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F78	5A	Ignition switch. Push button ignition switch.
F79	15A	Audio unit. Navigation DVD player. Touch screen. Hazard flasher switch. Door lock switch.
F80	20A	Moonroof.
F81	5A	Radio frequency receiver. Interior motion sensor.
F82	20A	Windshield washer pump.
F83	20A	Central locking system.
F84	-	Not used.
F85	7.5A	Ignition switch.
F86	10A	Air bag module. Occupant classification system. Passenger air bag deactivation indicator.
F87	-	Not used.
F88	-	Not used.
F89	-	Not used.

Luggage Compartment Fuse Box



E129927

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F1	5A	Hands-free liftgate actuation module.
F2	10A	Keyless vehicle module.
F3	5A	Keyless vehicle door handles.
F4	25A	Front left door control unit.
F5	25A	Front right door control unit.
F6	25A	Rear left door control unit.
F7	25A	Rear right door control unit.
F8	-	Not used.
F9	25A	Driver seat motor.
F10	-	Not used.
F11	5A	Rear ignition relay coil feed.
F12	10A	Climate control - vehicles with start-stop.
F13	5A	Instrument cluster - vehicles with start-stop.
F14	7.5A	Information and entertainment display. SYNC module. Global positioning system module - vehicles with start-stop.
F15	15A	Audio unit - vehicles with start-stop.
F16	-	Not used.
F17	-	Not used.
F18	-	Not used.
F19	-	Not used.
F20	-	Not used.
F21	-	Not used.
F22	-	Not used.
F23	-	Not used.
F24	30A	AC/DC auxiliary power points.
F24	20A	Rear auxiliary power points.

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F25	25A	Power liftgate.
F26	40A	Accessories. Trailer tow module.
F27	20A	Luggage compartment auxiliary power points.
F28	-	Not used.
F29	5A	Blind spot monitor. Front camera sensor. Adaptive cruise control. Rear view camera with park assist. Voltage quality module ignition signal.
F30	5A	Parking aid button.
F31	-	Not used.
F32	5A	DC/AC auxiliary power point ignition signal.
F33	-	Not used.
F34	20A	Driver heated seat.
F35	20A	Passenger heated seat.
F36	-	Not used.
F37	-	Not used.
F38	-	Not used.
F39	-	Not used.
F40	-	Not used.
F41	-	Not used.
F42	-	Not used.
F43	-	Not used.
F44	-	Not used.
F45	-	Not used.
F46	10A	Blind spot monitor. Front camera sensor. Adaptive cruise control. Rear view camera with park assist - vehicles with start-stop.

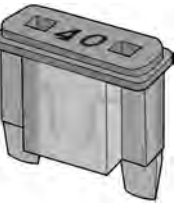
Relay	Circuits switched
R1	Ignition switch.
R2	Not used.
R3	Not used.
R4	Not used.
R5	Not used.
R6	Not used.

CHANGING A FUSE

Fuses

WARNING

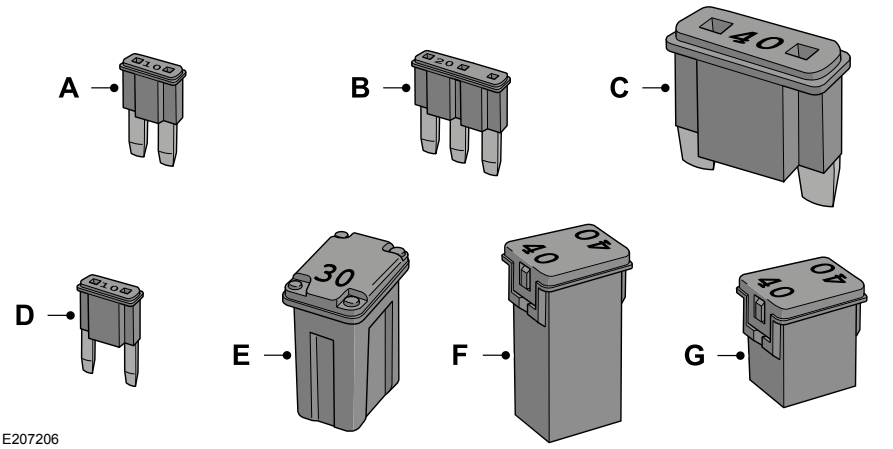
Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.



E217331

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

Fuse Types



Callout	Fuse Type
A	Micro 2
B	Micro 3
C	Maxi
D	Mini
E	M Case
F	J Case
G	J Case Low Profile

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS

Do not work on a hot engine.

Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake.

Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off.

Make sure that you fit filler caps securely after carrying out maintenance checks.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of Ford authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. Authorized repairers are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly, with a wide range of highly specialized tools.

In addition to regular servicing, we recommend that you carry out the following checks.

Check Daily

- Exterior lamps.
- Interior lamps.
- Warning lamps and indicators.

Check When Refueling

- Washer fluid level. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 193).
- Tire pressures. See **Technical Specifications** (page 218).
- Tire condition. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 206).

Check Monthly

- Engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 191).
- Engine coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 192).
- Brake fluid level.
- Pipes, hoses and reservoirs for leaks.
- Air conditioning operation.
- Parking brake operation.
- Horn operation.
- Tightness of lug nuts. See **Technical Specifications** (page 218).

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

Opening the Hood



E142457

1. Pull the hood release lever.
2. Slightly lift the hood.



E142458

3. Move the catch to the right to release the hood.



E87786

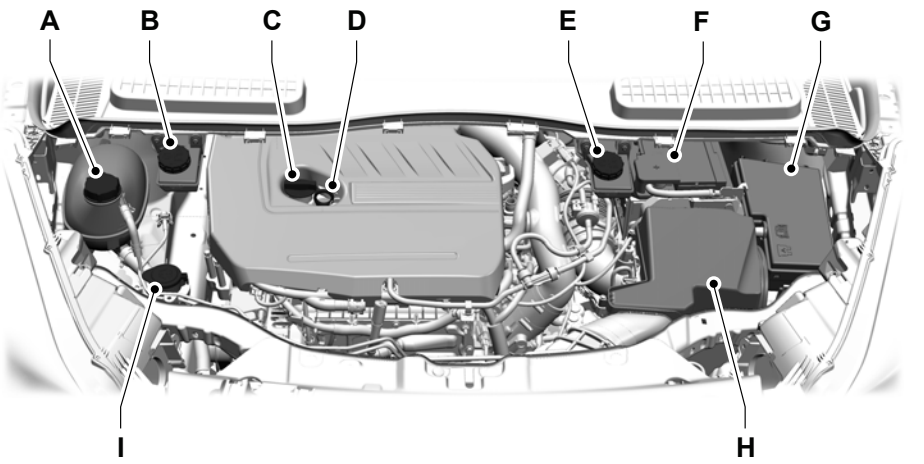
4. Open the hood and support it with the hood strut.

Closing the Hood

1. Remove the hood strut from the catch and secure it correctly in the clip.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 20–30 cm.

Note: *Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.*

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L ECOBOOST™



E190470

A Engine coolant reservoir*: See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 192).

B Brake fluid reservoir (right-hand drive)*: See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 193).

C Engine oil filler cap*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 191).

D Engine oil dipstick*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 191).

E Brake fluid reservoir (left-hand drive)*: See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 193).

F Battery: See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 194).

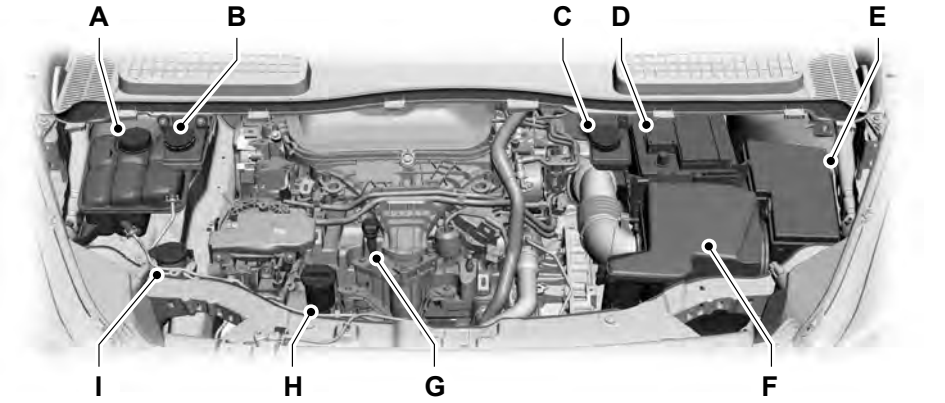
G Engine compartment fuse box: See **Fuses** (page 174).

H Air cleaner: No maintenance necessary.

I Windshield and rear window washer fluid reservoir: See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 193).

* The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are colored for easy identification.

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L DURATORQ-TDCI (DW) DIESEL



E152530

A Engine coolant reservoir*: See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 192).

B Brake fluid reservoir (right-hand drive)*: See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 193).

C Brake fluid reservoir (left-hand drive)*: See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 193).

D Battery: See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 194).

E Engine compartment fuse box: See **Fuses** (page 174).

F Air cleaner: No maintenance necessary.

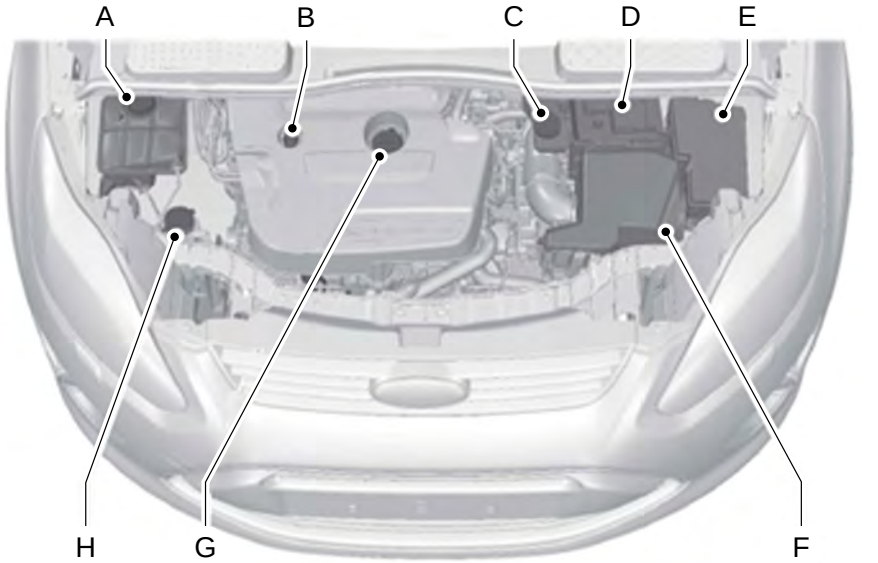
G Engine oil dipstick*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 191).

H Engine oil filler cap*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 191).

I Windshield and rear window washer fluid reservoir: See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 193).

* The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are colored for easy identification.

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L ECOBOOST™



E146022

A Engine coolant reservoir: See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 192).

B Engine oil dipstick: See **Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L EcoBoost (88kW/120PS)/1.5L EcoBoost (110kW/150PS)/1.5L EcoBoost (132kW/180PS), 1.5L EcoBoost™** (page ?).

C Brake fluid reservoir: See **Brake Fluid Check - Vehicles Built From: 22-02-2016** (page ?).

D Battery: See **Changing the 12V Battery - Canada/China/Mexico/United States of America, Vehicles Built From: 22-02-2016** (page ?).

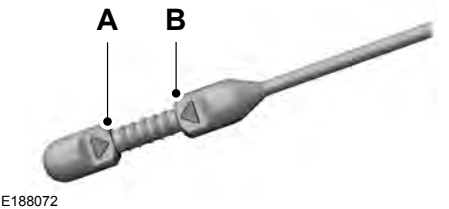
E Power distribution box: See **Fuses** (page 174).

F Air filter assembly: See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page ?).

G Engine oil filler cap: See **Engine Oil Check - Canada/Mexico/United States of America, Vehicles Built From: 22-02-2016** (page ?).

H Windshield washer fluid reservoir: See **Washer Fluid Check** (page ?).

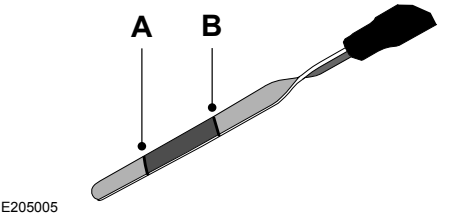
ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.5L ECOBOOST™



E188072

A Minimum.
B Maximum.

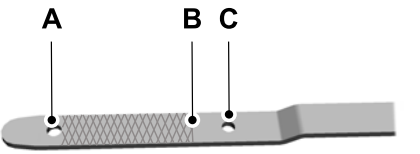
ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.0L DURATORQ-TDCI (DW) DIESEL



E205005

A Minimum.
B Maximum.

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.0L ECOBOOST™



E250320

A Minimum.
B Nominal.
C Maximum.

ENGINE OIL CHECK

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Switch off the engine and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint free cloth. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.

If the oil level is at the minimum mark, add oil immediately.

Note: *Check the oil level before starting the engine.*

Note: *Make sure that the oil level is between the minimum and the maximum marks.*

Note: *Do not use oil additives or other engine treatments. Under certain conditions, they may damage the engine.*

Note: *The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5,000 km.*

Adding Oil

WARNINGS

Only add oil when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down. Failure to take care may result in personal injury.

Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running. Failure to take care may result in personal injury.

1. Remove the filler cap.
2. Add oil that meets Ford specifications.
3. Replace the filler cap. Turn it until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: *Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.*

Note: *Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately.*

ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

WARNINGS

Do not dispose of engine coolant in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



E170684

Make sure that the coolant level is between the ***MIN*** and ***MAX*** marks on the coolant reservoir. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add coolant immediately.

The coolant concentration should be maintained within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -30ºF (-34ºC) and -34ºF (-37ºC).

Note: *Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the* ***MAX*** *mark.*

Note: *Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems.*

Adding Coolant

WARNINGS

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

Only add coolant when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.

WARNINGS

Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

Undiluted coolant is flammable and may ignite if spilled on a hot exhaust.

Ford Motor Company does not recommend the use of recycled engine coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.

Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle.

Note: *Add a 50/50 mixture of antifreeze and water or prediluted engine coolant that meets the correct specification.*

Note: *Use fluids which meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of other fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by your vehicle's Warranty.*

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Remove the coolant reservoir cap.
2. Add coolant to the ***MAX*** mark, do not overfill.
3. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: *In case of emergency, you can add water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.*

Note: *Prolonged use of an incorrect dilution of engine coolant can cause engine damage, such as corrosion, overheating or freezing.*

BRAKE FLUID CHECK

WARNINGS

Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

A fluid level between the ***MAX*** and ***MIN*** lines is within the normal operating range and there is no need to add fluid. A fluid level not in the normal operating range could compromise the performance of the system. Have your vehicle checked immediately.

To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

WASHER FLUID CHECK

Note: *The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.*

When adding fluid, use a mixture of washer fluid and water to help prevent freezing in cold weather and improve the cleaning capability. We recommend that you use only high quality washer fluid.

For information on fluid dilution, refer to the product instructions.

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

WARNINGS

Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.

For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

The battery is located in the engine compartment. See **Under Hood Overview** (page ?).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If your vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

To maintain correct operation of the battery management system, if you add any electrical devices to your vehicle, do not connect the ground connection directly to the negative battery terminal. A connection at the negative battery terminal can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *Electrical accessories or components added to your vehicle by you or an authorized dealer, may adversely affect battery performance, durability and the performance of other electrical systems on your vehicle.*

If a replacement battery is required, we recommend you use a Ford replacement battery that matches the electrical requirements of your vehicle.

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, transmission must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

Remove and Reinstall the Battery

To disconnect or remove the battery, do the following:

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

Note: *The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

4. Disconnect the negative (-) battery cable terminal first.
5. Disconnect the positive (+) battery cable terminal last.
6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.
8. Install in the reverse order.

Note: *Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.*

Note: *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid un-intended connection or arcing.*

Note: *Make sure the battery cable terminals are fully tightened.*

Note: *If you disconnect or replace the battery, you must reset the clock and the pre-set radio stations once the battery is reconnected.*

Battery Disposal



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



E142463

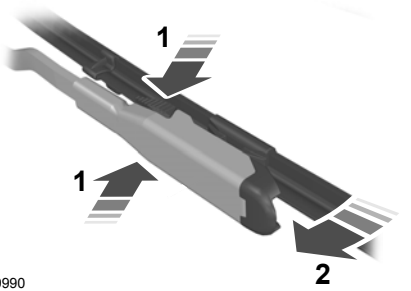
Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

The wiper arms can be manually moved when the ignition is off. This allows for ease of blade replacement and cleaning under the blades.

1. Pull the wiper blade and arm away from the glass.



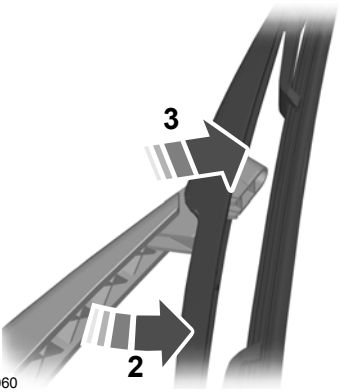
E129990

2. Press the locking buttons together.
3. Rotate and remove the wiper blade.
4. Install in the reverse order.

Note: *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place. Lower the wiper arm and blade back to the windshield. The wiper arms will automatically return to their normal position when the ignition is turned on.*

To change the rear blades, do the following:

1. Lift the wiper arm.



E130060

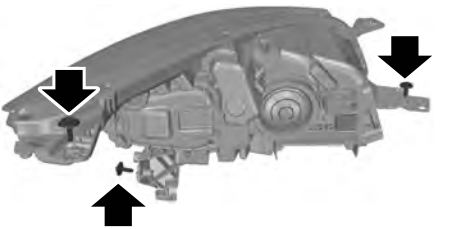
2. Slightly rotate the wiper blade from the wiper arm.
3. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.
4. Remove the wiper blade.
5. Install in the reverse order.

Note: *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.*

Replace wiper blades at least once per year for optimum performance.

Poor wiper quality can be improved by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield.

REMOVING A HEADLAMP



E159160

1. Make sure the lighting control is in the off position and open the hood.
2. Remove the three screws from the headlamp assembly.
3. Carefully pull the headlamp assembly as far as possible toward the front of your vehicle to disengage it from the lower fixing point.
4. Carefully lift the outer side of the headlamp and remove it.
5. Disconnect the electrical connector.

CHANGING A BULB

WARNINGS

Switch the lamps and the ignition off.

WARNINGS

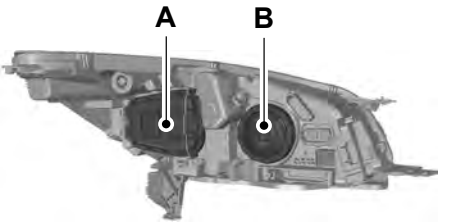
Let the bulb cool down before removing it.

Note: *Only fit bulbs of the correct specification.*

Note: *The following instructions describe how to remove the bulbs. Fit replacements in the reverse order unless otherwise stated.*

Headlamp

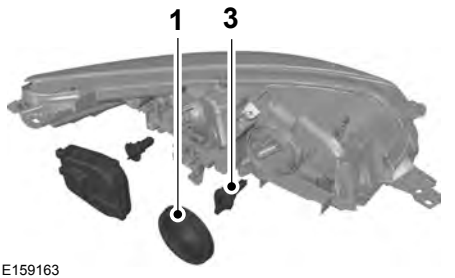
Type 1



E159161

A Low beam headlamp
B High beam headlamp

Headlamp High Beam

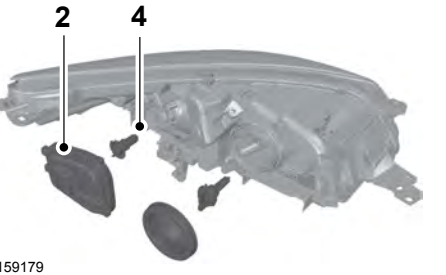


E159163

1. Remove the cover.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Turn the bulb counterclockwise and pull it straight out to remove it.

Note: *Do not touch the glass of the bulb.*

Headlamp Low Beam

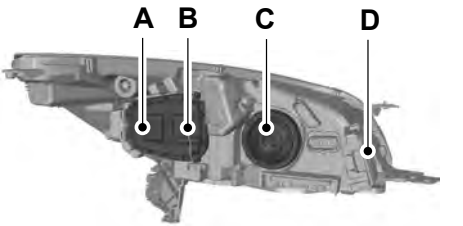


E159179

1. Release the metal retaining clip.
2. Remove the cover.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Remove the bulb.

Note: *Do not touch the glass of the bulb.*

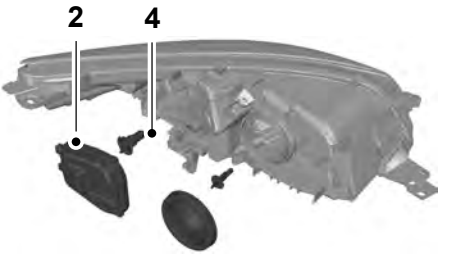
Type 2



E159162

A Low beam headlamp
B High beam headlamp
C Fixed bending light
D Park position

Headlamp High Beam

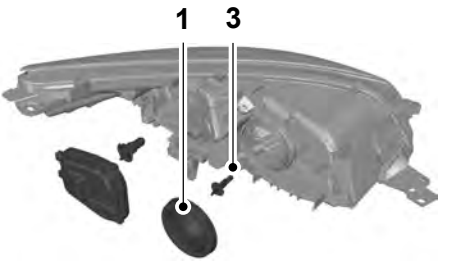


E159180

1. Release the metal retaining clip.
2. Remove the cover.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Remove the bulb.

Note: *Do not touch the glass of the bulb.*

Headlamp Fixed Bending Light Bulb



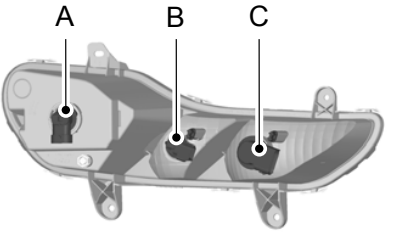
E159164

1. Remove the cover.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Turn the bulb counterclockwise and pull it straight out to remove it.

Note: *Do not touch the glass of the bulb.*

Direction Indicator, Front Fog Lamp and Position Lamp

Note: *The position and direction indicator bulbs are not serviceable items, see an authorized dealer if they fail.*



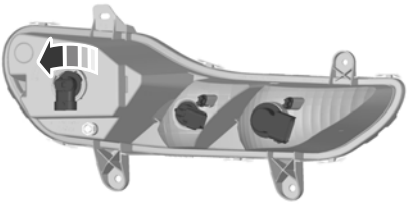
E165225

A	Fog lamp
B	Park lamp
C	Direction indicator lamp



E142798

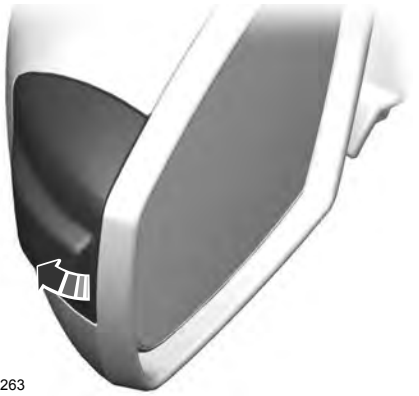
1. Turn the steering wheel to full lock.
2. Remove the retaining clips from the front wheel splash shield to gain access to the lamp assembly.



E165226

3. Remove the bulb holder from the lamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector.
5. Remove the bulb from the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.

Side Repeater



E72263

1. Carefully remove the side repeater.



E72291

2. Remove the bulb holder.
3. Remove the bulb.

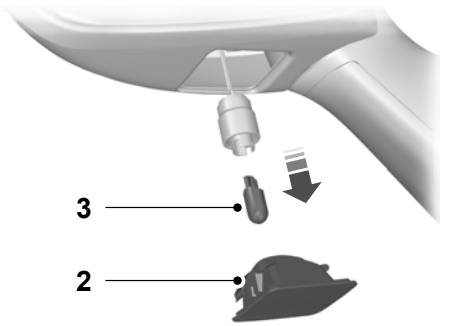
Approach Lamp

Note: *Position the mirror glass as far inward as possible.*



E72264

1. Insert a screwdriver into the gap between the mirror housing and the mirror glass and release the metal retaining clip.



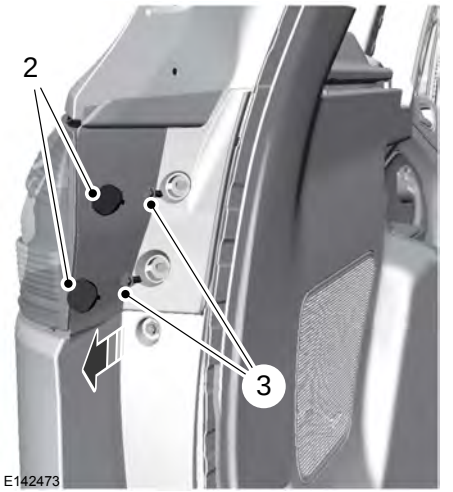
E72265

2. Remove the lamp.
3. Remove the bulb.

Rear Lamps

Type 1

Direction Indicator, Tail and Brake Lamp



E142473

1. Make sure the lighting control is in the off position and open the liftgate.
2. Remove the two bolt covers using a standard flat tip screwdriver.
3. Remove the two bolts from the lamp assembly.
4. Gently pull the lamp assembly away from your vehicle.

Type 2

Direction Indicator

Follow the same procedure as type 1 to remove the direction indicator bulb.

Note: *The tail and brake lamp bulbs are not serviceable items, see an authorized dealer if they fail.*

Reversing Lamp



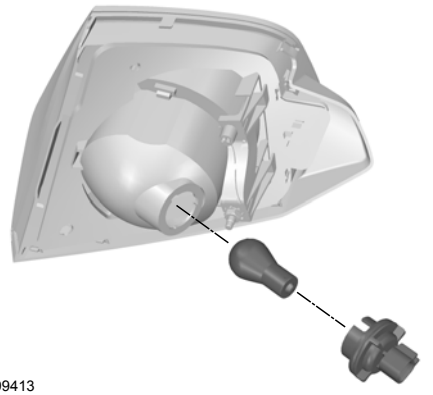
E159417

1. Insert a suitable object to pry open the trim panel.



E99412

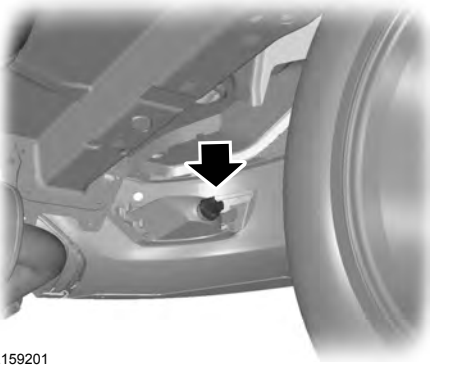
2. Remove the nut from the lamp assembly.
3. Gently pull the lamp assembly away from your vehicle.



E99413

4. Gently press the bulb into the bulb holder, turn it counterclockwise and remove it.

Rear Fog Lamp



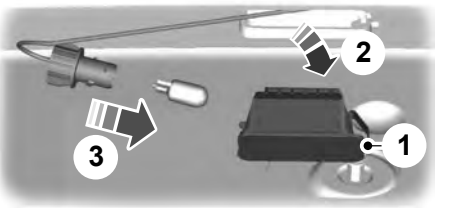
E159201

1. Disconnect the electrical connector.
2. Turn the bulb counterclockwise and pull it straight out to remove it.

Central High Mounted Brake Lamp

These are not serviceable items, see an authorized dealer if they fail.

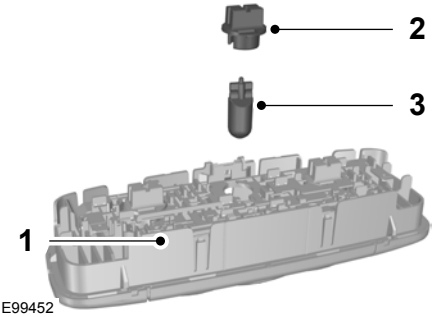
License Plate Lamp



E72789

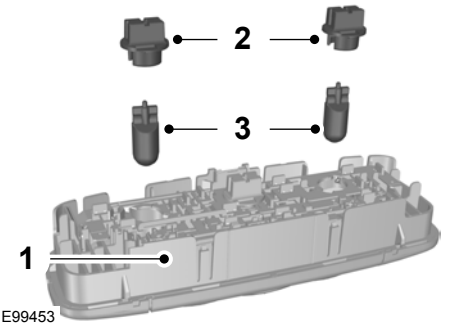
1. Carefully release the spring clip.
2. Remove the lamp.
3. Turn the bulb counterclockwise and remove it.

Interior lamp



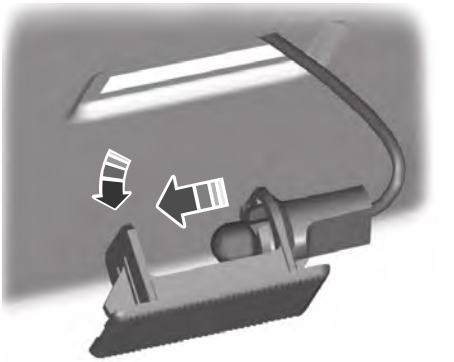
1. Carefully remove the lamp.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb.

Reading lamps



1. Carefully remove the lamp.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb.

Luggage Compartment Lamp, Footwell Lamp and Liftgate Lamp



1. Carefully prize out the lamp.
2. Remove the bulb.

BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Function	Trade number
Headlamps high beam (Halogen).	H15
* Headlamps high beam (HID).	D3S
Headlamp low beam (Halogen).	H7

Function	Trade number
* Headlamp low beam (HID).	D3S
Static bending.	H1
* Position lamp - front (HI Series).	LED
Position lamp - front (Low Series).	W5W
Direction indicator lamp - front (HI Series).	WY21W
Direction indicator lamp - front (Low Series).	WY21W
Fog lamps.	H10 (9145)
Tail and brake lamp.	PY21/5W
Direction indicator lamp - rear.	T20
Reversing lamp.	921
License plate lamp.	W5W
* High-mount brake lamp.	LED

* To replace these lamps - see an authorized dealer.

To replace all instrument panel lamps - see an authorized dealer

Interior Lamps

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Glove compartment lamp.	W6W	6
Interior lamp.	LED	LED
Vanity mirror lamp.	211 Festoon	10
Luggage compartment lamp.	W5W	5

Note: *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

We recommend that you wash your vehicle regularly with a sponge and lukewarm water containing a neutral pH car shampoo.

Never use strong household detergents or soap, such as dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and can cause spotting on painted surfaces.

Never wash your vehicle when it is hot to the touch or during exposure to strong, direct sunlight.

Dry your vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel in order to eliminate water spotting.

Immediately remove items such as gasoline, diesel fuel, bird droppings and insect deposits as they can cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork and trim over time.

Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage any painted surface. If these substances come in to contact with your vehicle, wash them off as soon as possible.

Using a Car Wash

WARNINGS

If you use a car wash with a waxing cycle, make sure that you remove the wax from the windshield.

Switch the heater blower off to prevent contamination of the fresh air filter.

Prior to using a car wash facility check the suitability of it for your vehicle.

Some car wash installations use water at high pressure. This could damage certain parts of your vehicle.

Remove any exterior accessories, including the antenna, before using an automatic car wash.

Cleaning the Headlamps

WARNINGS

Do not scrape the headlamp lenses or use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.

Do not wipe the headlamps when they are dry.

Cleaning the Chrome Trim

Do not use abrasives or chemical solvents. Use soapy water.

Do not apply cleaning product to hot surfaces.

Do not leave cleaning product on chrome surfaces longer than recommended.

Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, may cause damage over a period of time.

Underbody

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Cleaning Plastic Exterior Parts

Use only approved products to clean plastic parts.

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

Note: *Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill on interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Damage may not be covered by your warranty.*

Seatbelts

Note: *Do not use abrasives, or chemical solvents to clean them.*

Note: *Do not allow moisture to penetrate the seatbelt retractor mechanism.*

Note: *Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water . Let them dry naturally, away from artificial heat.*

Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens

Note: *Do not use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean the instrument cluster screens, LCD screens or radio screens. These cleaning products can damage the screens.*

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp and soft cloth, then use a clean, dry and soft cloth to dry these areas.

Rear Windows

Note: *Do not use any abrasive materials to clean the interior of the rear windows.*

Note: *Do not install stickers or labels to the interior of the rear windows.*

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

You should repair paintwork damage caused by stones from the road or minor scratches as soon as possible. A choice of products are available from an authorized dealer.

Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.

Always read and follow the manufacturer's instructions before using the products.

CLEANING THE WHEELS

Note: *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.*

Note: *Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period of time.*

Note: *Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.*

Note: *If you intend parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This will reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

Note: *Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.*

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

- Clean them weekly with the recommended wheel and tire cleaner.
- Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.
- Rinse them thoroughly with a pressurized stream of water when you have completed the cleaning process.

We recommend that you use Ford service wheel cleaner. Make sure that you read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Using other non-recommended cleaning products can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

GENERAL INFORMATION

A decal with tire pressure data is located in the driver's door opening.

Check and set the tire pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive your vehicle and when the tires are cold.

Note: *Check your tire pressures regularly to optimize fuel economy.*

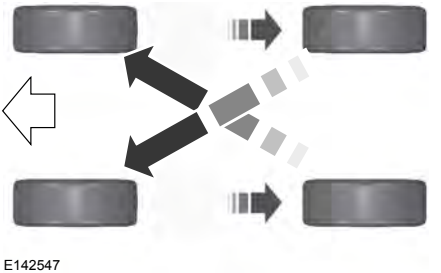
Note: *Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid.*

Note: *If you change the diameter of the tires from that fitted at the factory, the speedometer may not display the correct speed. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to have the engine management system reprogrammed.*

TIRE CARE

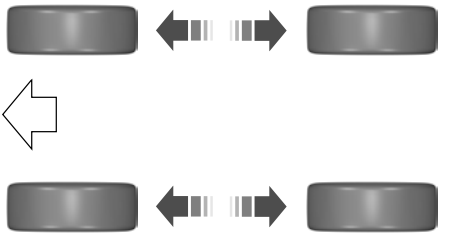
Note: *Front tires shown on the left side of the diagram.*

Non-directional tires



E142547

Directional tires



E70415

To make sure the front and rear tires of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tires from front to rear and vice versa at regular intervals between 5,000 km and 10,000 km.

WARNING

Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

Examine the tires regularly for cuts, foreign objects and uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

Check the tire pressures (including the spare) when cold, every two weeks.

USING SNOW CHAINS

WARNINGS

Do not exceed 50 km/h. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.

WARNINGS

Only fit snow chains to specified tires. See **Technical Specifications** (page 218).

If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

Note: *The anti-lock braking system will continue to operate normally.*

Only use small link snow chains.

Only use snow chains on the front wheels.

Vehicles with Stability Control

When stability control is on, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics. To reduce this, switch traction control off. See **Using Stability Control** (page 132).

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

WARNING

The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

You must check the tire pressures (including the spare tire where applicable) every two weeks when the tires are cold.

You must inflate the tires to the correct pressure.

See **Wheels and Tires** (page 206). The tire pressures are also on the tire inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar).

As a driver assistance feature, your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system. A warning lamp will illuminate when one or more of the tires are significantly under-inflated. If the low tire pressure warning lamp illuminates, you should stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, check the tires and inflate them to the correct pressure.

Driving on under-inflated tires can:

- Cause them to overheat.
- Lead to tire failure.
- Reduce fuel efficiency.
- Reduce tire life.
- Affect vehicle handling or stopping ability.

The system is not a substitute for correct tire maintenance.

You must maintain the correct tire pressures, even if low tire pressure has not illuminated the warning lamp.

The tire pressure monitoring system has a system malfunction indicator to warn you when the system is not operating correctly. The malfunction indicator and low tire pressure warning lamp have a combined function. When the system detects a malfunction, the warning lamp will flash for approximately one minute and then remain illuminated. This sequence will occur every time you switch the ignition on while the malfunction remains. The system has detected a fault that requires service.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressures. A malfunction may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of a replacement tire or wheel that prevents the system from functioning correctly. Always check the tire pressure monitoring system malfunction warning after

replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle. Make sure the replacement tires or wheels allow the system to continue to function correctly. See **When the Temporary Spare Tire is Installed** in this section.

How Temperature Affects the Tire Pressures

Under normal driving conditions tire pressures may increase by up to 0.3 bar from a cold start situation.

If the vehicle is stationary overnight and the temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, tire pressures may decrease by up to 0.2 bar when there is a drop in the ambient temperature of 31ºF (17ºC) or more. The system detects this pressure decrease as being significantly below the correct inflation pressure and the warning lamp illuminates.

When Inflating Tires

When inflating the tires the system may not respond immediately to the air added to the tires.

Only inflate tires when they are cold.

If the warning lamp is on:

- Check each tire to verify that none are flat.
- If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary.
- Check the tire pressures and inflate all tires to the correct pressure. See **Technical Specifications** (page 218).
- Carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure.

When Changing Tires


E142549

You should always have tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

Note: *Each road wheel and tire is fitted with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor attaches to the valve stem. The tire covers the pressure sensor and it is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.*

When Changing Wheels

When changing the wheels of your vehicle, the tire pressure monitoring system needs to re-learn the tire pressure sensors. To achieve this perform the following:

1. Make sure all tires are inflated to the proper pressure. If not, inflate the tires to the correct pressure. See **Technical Specifications** (page 218).
2. Park your vehicle for at least 20 minutes.
3. Carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure** later in this section.

4. The tire pressure monitoring system will automatically re-learn the tire pressure sensors the next time you drive your vehicle for approximately 15 minutes above 40km/h (25 mph).

Understanding the Tire Pressure Monitoring System

The system measures the pressure in the four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle.

The system detects this lower pressure as being significantly below the correct inflation pressure and the warning lamp illuminates. You must inflate the tires to the correct pressure.

When the Temporary Spare Tire is Installed

If you need to replace a road wheel and tire with the temporary spare wheel, the system will continue to identify a defect. This is to remind you to repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle. To restore the correct operation of the system, you must have the repaired road wheel and tire assembly refitted to your vehicle.

When You Believe the System is Not Operating Correctly

The main function of the system is to warn you when the tire pressures are low. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of operating correctly. See the following chart for information concerning the system:

System Warning Lamps

Warning lamp	Description	Action
Solid warning lamp	Tire(s) under-inflated	1. Make sure tires are at the correct pressure. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 206). The tire pressures are also on the tire inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar). 2. After inflating the tires to the correct pressure you must carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure** in this chapter.
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are correctly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, the system has detected a fault that requires service.
Solid warning lamp initially followed by a flashing warning lamp	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are correctly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, the system has detected a fault that requires service.

If the Warning Lamp is On:

1. Check each tire to verify that none are flat.
2. If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary.
3. Check the tire pressures and inflate all the tires to the correct pressure.
4. Carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure

Overview

You must carry out the system reset procedure after each tire replacement or adjustment of the tire pressures.

To maintain your vehicle load carrying capability, your vehicle requires different tire pressures in the front tires compared to the rear tires.

The system illuminates the warning lamp at different pressures for the front and rear tires.

The tires need to be periodically rotated to provide consistent performance and maximum tire life, the system needs to know when the tires have been rotated to determine which set of tires are on the front and rear axles. With this information, the system can detect and correctly warn of low tire pressures.

Carrying Out the System Reset Procedure

1. Check the tire pressures and inflate all the tires to the correct pressure.
2. Use the information display controls on the steering wheel or instrument panel. See **Information Displays** (page 66).

To reset the tire pressure monitoring system, scroll to:

Message	Description and Action
Settings	Press the **OK** button.
Driver assist	Press the **OK** button.
Tire Monitor	Press and hold the **OK** button until confirmation appears. Alternatively, if your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system reset button, press and hold the button until confirmation appears.

CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

Locking Lug Nuts

You can obtain a replacement locking lug nut key and replacement locking lug nuts from an authorized dealer using the reference number certificate.

Vehicles with a Spare Wheel

If the spare wheel is exactly the same type and size as the other fitted road wheels, you can replace the existing road wheel with the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner.

If the spare wheel is different to the other road wheels, it will carry a yellow label with the appropriate speed limit.

Refer to the following information before changing the road wheel.

WARNINGS

Drive the shortest possible distances.

Do not fit more than one spare wheel on your vehicle at any one time.

Do not carry out any tyre repairs on a spare wheel.

Do not drive through an automatic car wash.

WARNINGS

If you are unsure what type of spare wheel you have do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).

Only fit snow chains to specified tyres. See **Technical Specifications** (page 218).

The ground clearance of your vehicle may be reduced. Take care when parking next to a curb.

Note: *Your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.*

Vehicle Jack

WARNINGS

Ensure screw thread is adequately lubricated before use.

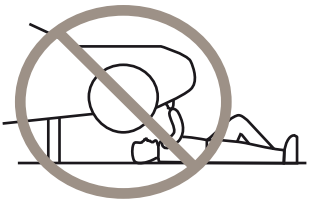
The jack should be used on level firm ground wherever possible.

Switch the ignition off and apply park brake fully before lifting vehicle.

It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.

No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

WARNING: Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



E166722

WARNING

WARNING: The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing wheels. Do not use the vehicle jack other than when you are changing a wheel in an emergency.

Note: *Vehicles with a temporary mobility kit do not have a vehicle jack or a wheel brace.*

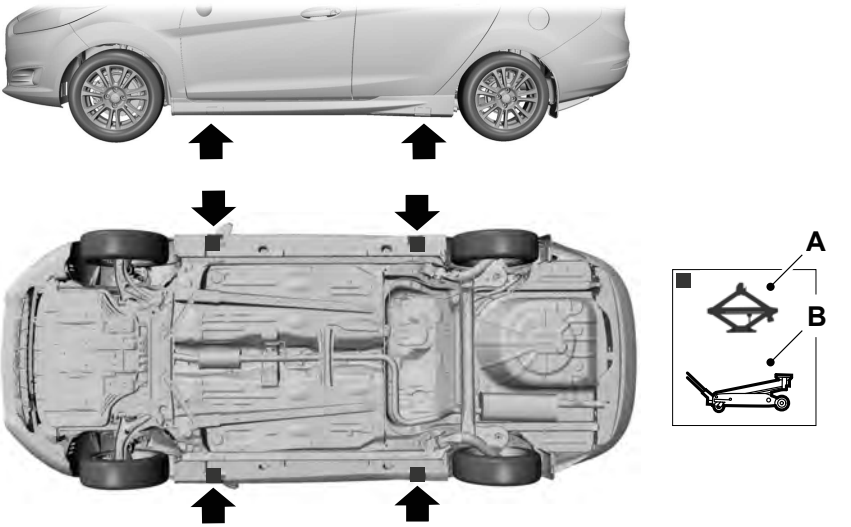
Vehicles without a Temporary Mobility Kit

Your vehicle jack, wheel brace, screw-in towing eye and wheel trim remover are located in the spare wheel well.

Jacking and Lifting Points

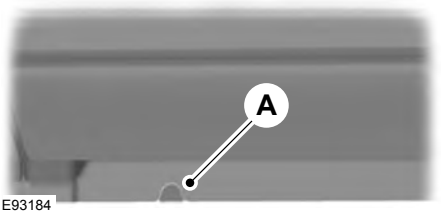
WARNING

Use only the specified jacking points. If you use other positions, you may damage the body, steering, suspension, engine, braking system or the fuel lines.



E92658

A Emergency use only
B Maintenance



E93184

Small marks on the vehicle sills **(A)** show the location of the jacking points.



E142553

Place the hexagonal end of the vehicle jack handle and lug nut tool onto the vehicle jack. Turn the jack handle clockwise to raise your vehicle.



E93020

Refer to vehicle jack manufacturer's instructions.

Assembling the Wheel Brace

Type One

WARNING

The screw-in towing eye has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it. Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened.



E122502

Insert the screw-in towing eye into the wheel brace.

Type Two



E159432

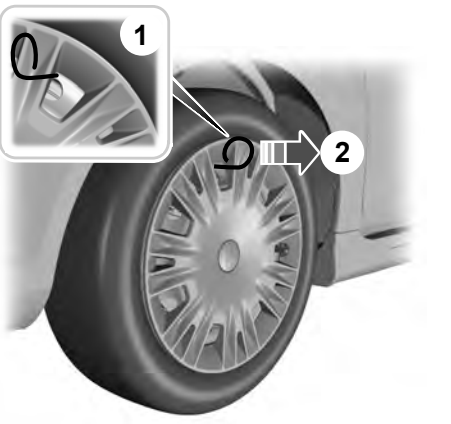
Note: *When jacking your vehicle, you will need to rotate the wheel brace 180 degrees, pivot the wheel brace back to the original position before rotating again.*

Using the Wheel Brace as a Jack Handle

1. Attach the wheel brace to the jack horizontally.
2. Rotate the wheel brace 180 degrees.
3. Return the wheel brace to the original position and repeat as necessary.

Removing the Wheel Trim

Type One



E122314

1. Insert the wheel trim remover.

2. Remove the wheel trim.

Note: *Make sure that you pull the wheel trim remover at right angles to the trim.*

Type Two

Insert the flat end of the wheel brace between the rim and the trim and carefully remove the trim.

Removing a Road Wheel

WARNINGS

Park your vehicle in such a position that neither the traffic nor you are hindered or endangered.

Make sure that the wheels are pointing straight ahead.

If your vehicle has a manual transmission, move the selector lever to first or reverse gear. If it has an automatic transmission, move the selector lever to park (P).

Secure the diagonally opposite wheel with an appropriate block or wheel chock.

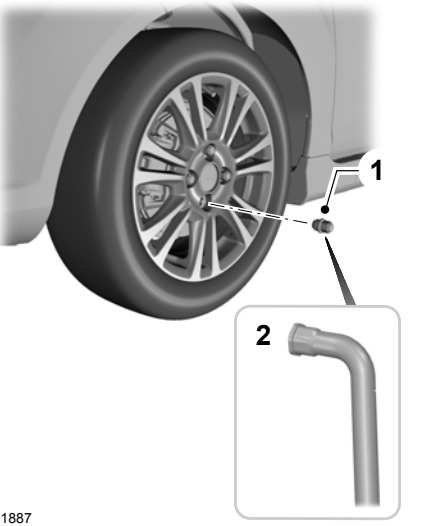
Make sure that the jack is vertical to the jacking point and the base is flat on the ground.

Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

Note: *Do not lay allow wheels face down on the ground, this will damage the paint.*

Note: *The spare wheel is located under the floor cover in the luggage compartment.*

1. Install the locking lug nut key.



E121887

2. Ensue screwthread is adequately lubricated before use.
3. Slacken the lug nuts.
4. Jack up your vehicle until the tyre is clear of the ground.
5. Remove the lug nuts and the wheel.

Installing a Road Wheel

WARNINGS

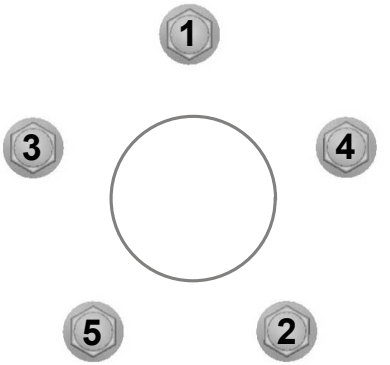
Do not fit run flat tires on vehicles that were not originally fitted with them. Please contact an authorized dealer for more details regarding compatibility

Do not install alloy wheels using lug nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

Note: *The lug nuts of alloy wheels and spoked steel wheels can also be used for the steel spare wheel for a short time (maximum two weeks).*

Note: *Make sure the wheel and hub contact surfaces are free from foreign matter.*

1. Install the wheel.
2. Install the lug nuts finger tight.
3. Install the locking lug nut key.



E154985

4. Partially tighten the lug nuts in the sequence shown.
5. Lower your vehicle and remove the jack.
6. Fully tighten the lug nuts in the sequence shown. See **Technical Specifications** (page 218).
7. Install the wheel trim using the ball of your hand.

WARNING

Have the lug nuts checked for tightness and the tyre pressure checked as soon as possible.

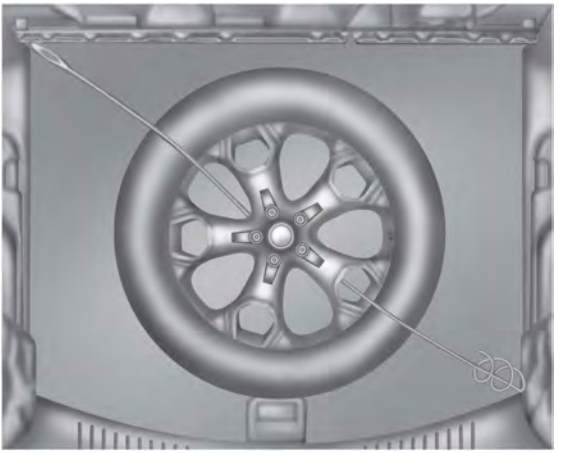
Stowing the Flat Tyre

1. Unblock the wheels.
2. Place the flat tyre on the luggage compartment floor.



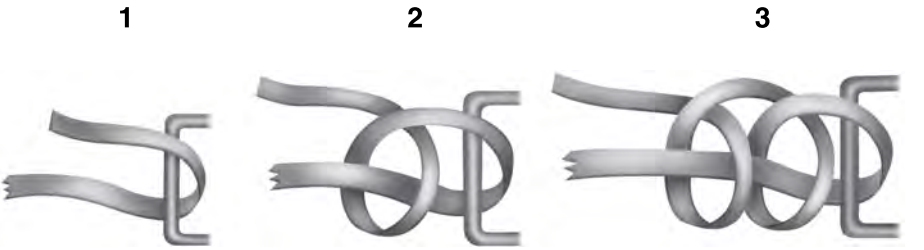
E142906

3. Locate the cargo tie-down near the seatback. Push the loop of the retainer strap through the tie-down. Thread the other end through the loop.



E142985

4. Weave the retainer strap through the wheel openings.
5. Locate the front cargo tie-down at the opposite corner of the luggage compartment. Thread the retainer strap through the tie-down and pull it tight.



E143746

6. Secure by tying two half hitch knots.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Lug Nut Torque

Wheel type	lb-ft (Nm)
All	100 (135)

Tire Pressures (Cold Tires)

Up to 50 mph (80 km/h)

Variant	Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		kPa	kPa	kPa	kPa
Temporary spare wheel when it differs from the other fitted wheels	155/70 R17	420 kPa	420 kPa	420 kPa	420 kPa

Up to 68 mph (110 km/h)

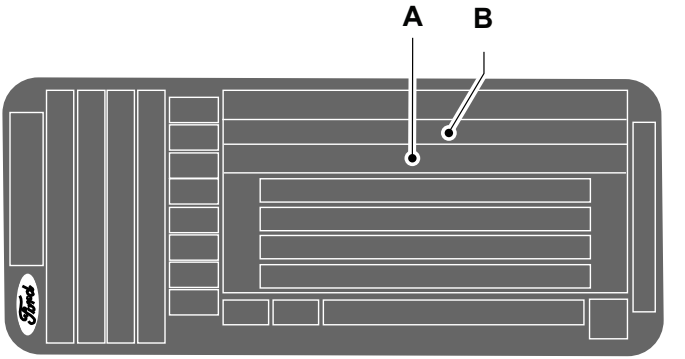
Variant	Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		kPa	kPa	kPa	kPa
All engines	235/55 R17 *	240 kPa	240 kPa	240 kPa	280 kPa
All engines	235/50 R18	230 kPa	230 kPa	240 kPa	280 kPa
All engines	235/45 R19	230 kPa	230 kPa	240 kPa	280 kPa

*Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

Note: *Your vehicle identification plate design may vary to that shown.*

Note: *The information shown on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.*



E219554

A Vehicle identification number

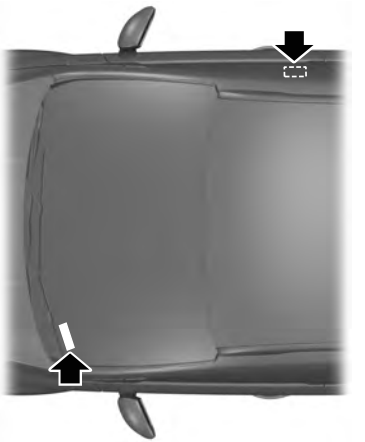
B Vehicle Built Date

Your vehicle identification number and maximum weights are shown on a plate, located at the bottom of the lock side of the right-hand door aperture.

Built Date

Built Date means the calendar month and the year in which the body shell and power train sub-assemblies are conjoined and the vehicle is driven or moved from the production line.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER



E87496

The vehicle identification number is stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, beside the front seat. It is also shown on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.

GENERAL INFORMATION

Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

Radio reception factors	
Distance and Strength	The further you travel away from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.
Station overload	When you pass near a radio transmission tower, a stronger signal can override a weaker signal and can cause interference in the audio system.

CD and CD Player Information

Note: *CD units play commercially pressed 4.75-inch (12 centimeter) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.*

Note: *Do not insert CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. You should use a permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels on your homemade CDs. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact an authorized dealer for further information.*

Note: *Do not use any irregularly shaped discs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.*

Always handle discs by their edges only. Clean the disc with an approved CD cleaner only. Wipe it from the center of the disc toward the edge. Do not clean in a circular motion.

Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods.

MP3 and WMA Track and Folder Structure

Audio systems capable of recognizing and playing MP3 and WMA individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 and WMA disc playback: MP3 and WMA track mode (system default) and MP3 and WMA folder mode.
- MP3 and WMA track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 and WMA disc. The player numbers each MP3 and WMA track on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255. The maximum number of playable MP3 and WMA files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.

- MP3 and WMA folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 and WMA tracks on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) and all folders containing MP3 and WMA files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders helps with navigation through the disc files.

If you are burning your own MP3 and WMA discs, it is important to understand how the system reads the structures you create. While various files may be present, (files with extensions other than MP3 and WMA), only files with the MP3 and WMA extension are played; other files are ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 and WMA disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in-vehicle system.

In track mode, the system displays and plays the structure as if it were only one level deep (all MP3 and WMA files play, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system only plays the MP3 and WMA files in the current folder.

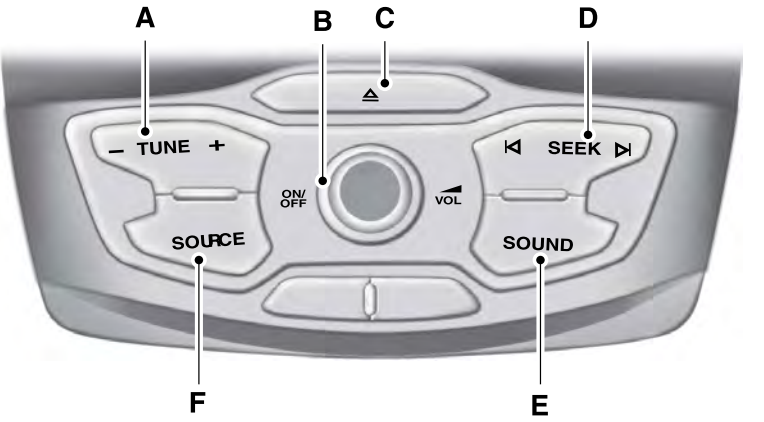
AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: PREMIUM AM/FM/CD

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *The CD slot is directly above the touchscreen.*

Note: *The touchscreen system controls most of the audio features. See your MyFord Touch information.*



E143843

A **TUNE:** In radio mode, press to manually search through the radio frequency band.

B **VOL and Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. Turn to adjust the volume.

C **Eject:** Press to eject a CD.

D **Seek, Fast Forward and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction. In CD mode, press to select the next track. Press and hold to move quickly forward through the current track.

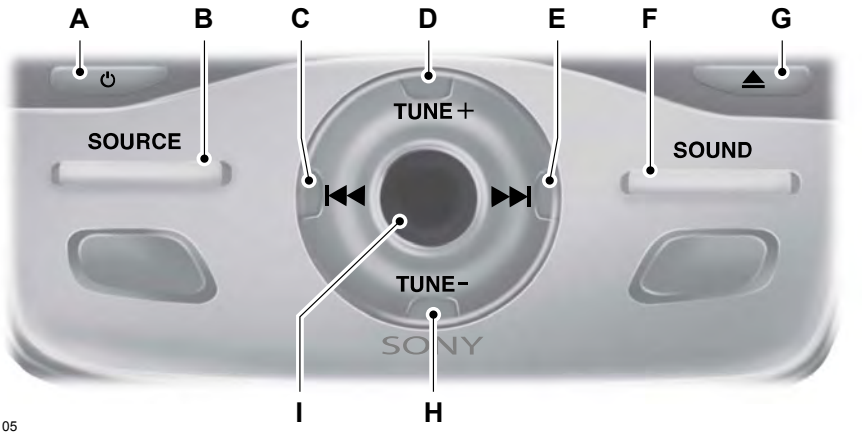
E **SOUND:** Press to access settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade or Balance.

F **SOURCE:** Press to access different audio modes, for example AM, FM and CD.

AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2

Audio Unit Overview

Note: *The CD slot is directly above the touchscreen.*



E233105

A On and off button.
B Source select button.
C Seek down and previous track button.
D Manual tune up button.
E Seek up and next track button.
F Sound settings button.
G CD eject button.
H Manual tune down button.
I Volume control.

Audio Unit Operation

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Source Select Button

Press to access different audio modes, such as AM, FM and Line In.

Seek Down and Previous Track Button

In radio mode, press to seek the next station down the frequency band. In CD mode, press to select the previous track.

Seek Up and Next Track Button

In radio mode, press to seek the next station up the frequency band. In CD mode, press to select the next track.

Manual Tune Up Button

Press to tune up the frequency band.

Manual Tune Down Button

Press to tune down the frequency band.

Sound Settings Button

Press this to adjust the sound settings, for example bass, treble, balance and fade.

DIGITAL RADIO

General Information

The system allows you to listen to DAB (Digital Audio Broadcast) radio stations.

Note: *Coverage differs from region to region and influences the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally. Coverage may vary on weather conditions and terrain.*

The following formats are supported:

- DAB.
- DAB+.
- DMB-Audio (Digital Multimedia Broadcasting).

Ensembles

Ensembles contain a group of radio stations. Each ensemble can consist of several different radio stations.

The radio station name displays below the ensemble name.

Note: *When you tune from one ensemble to another, it can take a while until the system synchronizes to the next ensemble. The system mutes during synchronization.*

Selecting Radio Band

DAB1 and DAB2 operate in the same way. You can store up to 10 different presets on each band.

1. Press the **RADIO** button.
2. Press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands.
3. Select **DAB1** or **DAB2**.

Note: *When you reach the first or last radio station within an ensemble, further tuning will skip to the next ensemble. There may be a delay during this change and the audio will briefly mute.*

Radio Station Tuning Controls

Seek Tuning (Alternative 1)

1. Press a seek button. The system stops at the first radio station it finds in the direction chosen.

Radio Station List (Alternative 2)

This feature displays all the available radio stations in a list.

1. Press function button 1.
2. Press the left or right arrow buttons to change ensembles. Press the up or down arrow buttons to navigate to your required radio station.
3. Press **OK** to confirm your selection.

Note: *The display only shows radio stations in the current ensemble.*

Manual Tuning (Alternative 3)

1. Press function button 2.
2. Press the tune buttons. Press and hold to move through the waveband quickly.
3. Press **OK** to confirm your selection.

Note: *Seek tuning is also possible within this screen.*

Radio Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store up to 10 favorite radio stations from any ensemble in each preset bank.

1. Select a radio station.
2. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. When the system stores the station, a message appears. The system mutes momentarily as confirmation.

Once stored press a preset button at any time to select a favorite radio station.

Note: *Radio stations stored on the preset buttons may not always be available if you have left the coverage area. The system mutes when this happens. This may result in unexpected changes to radio station presets.*

Radio Text

You can display extra information. For example; artist name. To switch this option on, select a radio station and press function button 3.

Note: *Extra information may not always be available.*

Service Linking

If you leave the coverage area of a DAB radio station the system will automatically switch to the corresponding FM radio station.

You can switch this feature on and off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 66).

Note: *If a DAB radio station has no corresponding FM radio station, the audio will mute when attempting to switch.*

Note: *The system displays the FM symbol when DAB and FM radio stations link.*

Note: *The sound quality changes when your system switches from DAB to the corresponding FM station.*

AUDIO INPUT JACK

WARNINGS

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend

WARNINGS

against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

For safety reasons, do not connect or adjust the settings on your portable music player while your vehicle is moving.

Store the portable music player in a secure location, such as the center console or the glove box, when your vehicle is moving. Hard objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while your vehicle is moving.



E149149

The auxiliary input jack allows you to connect and play music from your portable music player through your vehicle speakers. You can use any portable music player designed for use with headphones. Your audio extension cable must have male 1/8th-inch (3.5 millimeter) connectors at each end.

1. Switch off the engine, radio and portable music player. Set the parking brake and put the transmission in position **P**.
2. Plug the extension cable from the portable music player into the auxiliary input jack.
3. Switch the radio on. Select either a tuned FM station or a CD.
4. Adjust the volume as desired.
5. Switch your portable music player on and adjust its volume to half its maximum level.
6. Press the media button until the audio input option appears in the display. You should hear music from your device even if it is low.
7. Adjust the volume on your portable music player until it reaches the volume level of the FM station or CD. Do this by switching back and forth between the AUX and FM or CD controls.

USB PORT (If Equipped)

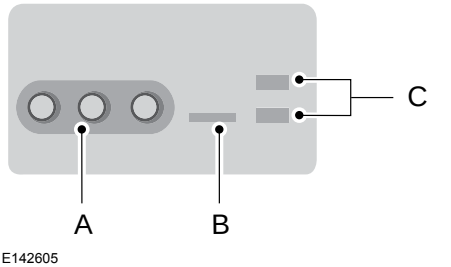


E142604

The USB port allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks and charge devices (if supported). See your SYNC information.

MEDIA HUB

The media hub is located in the center console and has the following features:

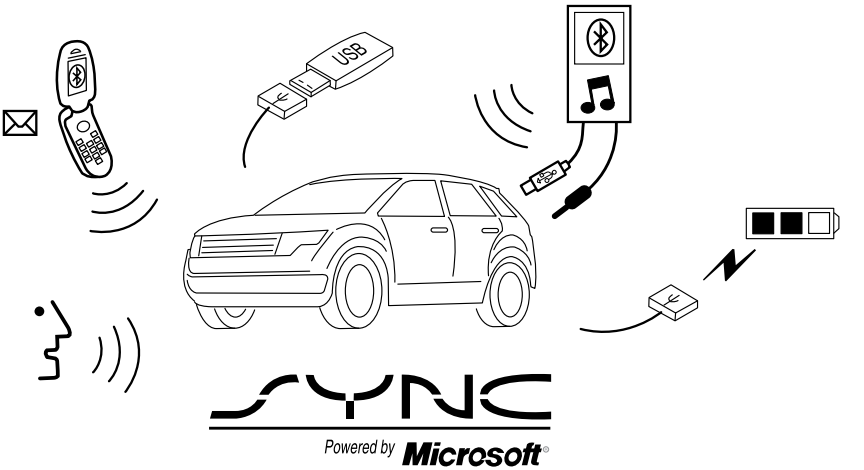


A	A/V inputs
B	SD card slot
C	USB ports

AUDIO TROUBLESHOOTING

Audio unit display	Rectification
Please check CD	General error message for CD fault conditions, for example cannot read the CD, data-CD inserted, etc. Make sure the disc is loaded correctly. Clean and re-try, or replace disc with known music disc. If error persists contact an authorized dealer.
CD drive malfunction	General error message for CD fault conditions. For example a mechanism fault.
CD drive high temp.	Ambient temperature too hot – unit will not work until it has cooled down.

GENERAL INFORMATION



E142598

Note: *This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.*

SYNC 2 uses Bluetooth wireless technology to pass information between your vehicle and your phone. You can use voice commands and other simple controls, such as steering wheel buttons, to make and receive calls or listen to text messages. Whatever your phone can do, SYNC lets you do so you can keep your hands on the wheel and your eyes on the road.

Like a universal remote control, SYNC controls other systems besides your phone. SYNC connects you to:

- **Entertainment**, including AM/FM radio, DAB Radio (if equipped), or music on USB, SD Card, and other external devices
- **Navigation** assitance (if equipped), including maps
- **Information** such as traffic (if equipped), notification, calendar and more through SYNC Application and Services (if equipped)
- **Climate** controls
- **Settings**

SYNC is customized in each vehicle, so the design is different, but the basics are the same. In vehicles with SYNC 2, the 8-inch touchscreen in the center console lets you view information and adjust Phone, Entertainment, Navigation (if equipped), and Climate settings.

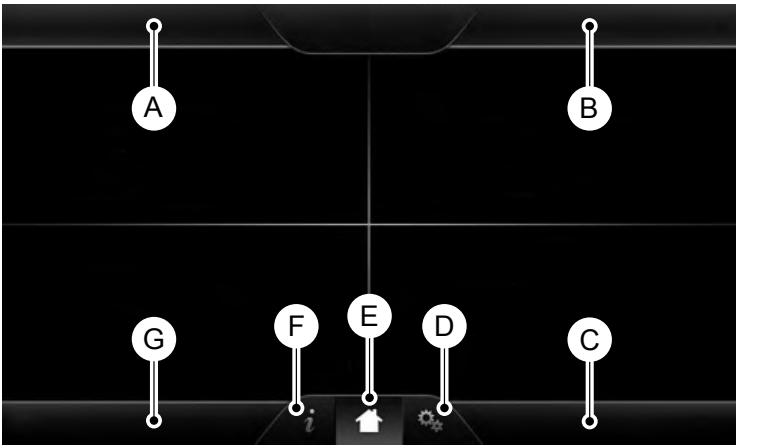
Note: *Make sure that you refer your device's user guide before using it with SYNC.*

Note: *Your SYNC system performs regular system maintenance in the background while you are not using the car.*

WARNINGS

Operating certain parts of this system while driving can distract your attention away from the road, and possibly cause an accident or other serious consequences. Do not change system settings or enter data non-verbally (using your hands) while driving. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations. This is important since while setting up or changing some functions you might be required to distract your attention away from the road and remove your hands from the wheel.

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



E161891

A Phone

B Navigation (or Information if your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation)

C Climate

D Settings
E Home
F Information (if your vehicle is equipped with Navigation)
G Entertainment

This system uses a four-corner strategy to provide quick access to several vehicle features and settings. The touchscreen provides easy interaction with your cellular phone, multimedia, climate control and navigation system. The corners display any active modes within those menus, such as phone status or the climate temperature.

Note: *Some features are not available while your vehicle is moving.*

Note: *Your system is equipped with a feature that allows you to access and control audio features for 30 minutes after you switch the ignition off (and no doors open).*

PHONE

Press to select any of the following:
- Phone
- Speed Dial
- Phonebook
- Call History
- Messaging
- Settings

NAVIGATION (If Equipped)

Press to select any of the following:
- My Home
- Favorites
- Previous Destinations
- Place of Interest
- Emergency
- Address
- Junction
- Town Centre
- Map
- Edit Route
- Cancel Route

CLIMATE

Press to select any of the following:
- Driver Settings
- Recirculated Air
- Auto
- Dual (If Equipped)
- Passenger Settings
- A/C
- Defrost



SETTINGS

Press to select any of the following:
- Clock
- Display
- Sound
- Vehicle
- Settings
- Help



HOME

Press to access your home screen. Depending on your vehicle's option package and software, your screens may vary in appearance from the descriptions in this section. Your features may also be limited depending on your market. Check with an authorized dealer for availability.

INFORMATION

Press to select any of the following:

- Traffic (If Equipped)
- Notific.
- Calendar
- Apps
- Where am I?

ENTERTAINMENT

Press to select any of the following:

- AM
- FM
- DAB
- CD
- USB
- BT Audio
- SD Card
- Line in

Using the Touch-Sensitive Controls on Your System

To turn a feature on or off, just touch the graphic with your finger. To get the best performance from the touch-sensitive controls:

- Do not press hard on the controls. They are sensitive to light touch.
- Use your bare finger to touch the center of a touch-control graphic. Touching off-center of the graphic may affect operation of a nearby control.
- Make sure your hands are clean and dry.
- Since the touchscreen operates based on the touch of a finger, you may have trouble using it if you are wearing gloves.
- Keep metal and other conductive material away from the surface of the touchscreen as this may cause electronic interference (for example, inadvertently turning on a feature other than the one you meant to turn on).

Cleaning the Touchscreen Display

Use a clean, soft cloth such as one used for cleaning glasses. If dirt or fingerprints are still visible, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth. Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the display. Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the display.

Support

For further support, see an authorized dealer. For more information, visit the regional Ford website **www.fordsync.com**

Safety Information

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. See an authorized dealer.
- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Place cords and cables out of the way, so they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's user guide for further information.
- For your safety, some SYNC functions are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle is traveling at speeds under 3 mph (5 km/h).

Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC.

Speed-restricted Features

Some features of this system may be too difficult to use while your vehicle is moving so they are restricted from use unless your vehicle is stationary.

- Screens crowded with information, such as Point of Interest reviews and ratings.
- Any action that requires you to use a keyboard is restricted, such as entering a navigation destination or editing information.
- All lists are limited so the user can view fewer entries (such as phone contacts or recent phone call entries).

See the following chart for more specific examples.

Restricted features	
Cellular Phone	Pairing a Bluetooth phone
	Adding phonebook contacts or uploading phonebook contacts (from a USB)
	List entries are limited for phone contacts and recent phone call entries
System Functionality	Enabling Valet Mode
	Editing settings while the rear view camera or active park assist are active
Wi-Fi and Wireless	Editing wireless settings
	Editing the list of wireless networks
Videos, Photos and Graphics	Editing the screen's wallpaper or adding new wallpaper
Text Messages	Composing text messages
	Viewing received text messages
	Editing preset text messages

Restricted features	
Navigation	Using the keyboard to enter a destination
	Demo navigation route
	Adding or editing Address Book entries or Avoid Areas

Privacy Information

When you connect a cellular phone to SYNC, the system creates a profile within your vehicle that links to that cellular phone. This profile helps in offering you more cellular features and operating more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your cellular phone book, text messages (read and unread), and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. In addition, if you connect a media device, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cellular profile, media device index, and development log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when the cellular phone or media player is connected. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you perform a Master Reset to erase all stored information.

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's SYNC module. Ford Motor Company does not access the system data for any purpose other than as described absent consent, a court order, or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities, or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company.

Using Voice Recognition

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is in front of you. The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction (voice settings).

The system also asks short questions (confirmation prompts) when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request.

When using voice commands, words and icons may appear in the lower left status bar indicating the status of the voice session (such as Listening, Success, Failed, Paused or Try Again).

How to Use Voice Commands with Your System



Press the voice icon. After the tone, speak your command clearly.

You can say any of the voice commands that appear within open and close brackets that are separated by |. For example, "(cancel | stop | exit)" appears, you say "cancel" or "stop" or "exit".

You must say any of the voice commands that appear outside of open and close brackets. For example, "what are my (options | choices)" appears, you must say "what are my", followed by either "options" or "choices".

You do not need to say words that appear within square brackets. For example, "what can I say [available] commands" appears, you can say "what can I say commands".

These commands can be said at any time during a voice session
"Cancel"
"Exit"
"Go back"
"List of commands"
"Main menu"
"Next page"
"Previous page"
"What can I say?"
"Help"

What Can I Say?

During a voice command session, press the help icon ? in the lower left status bar of the screen, and when prompted say one of the following:

Voice command	Action and Description
What can I say	This will provide an on-screen listing of the possible voice commands associated with your current voice command session.
voice settings help	This will provide a spoken listing of the possible voice commands associated with your current voice command session.

Helpful Hints

- Make sure the interior of your vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken commands.
- After pressing the voice icon, wait until after the tone sounds and Listening appears before saying a command. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.
- Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.
- At any time, you can interrupt the system while it is speaking by pressing the voice icon.

Accessing a List of Available Commands

- If you use the touchscreen, press the Settings icon > **Help** > **Voice Command List**.
- If you use the steering wheel control, press the voice icon. After the tone, speak your command clearly.

Available voice commands
"Audio list of commands"
"Bluetooth audio list of commands"
"Browse list of commands"
"CD list of commands"
"Climate control list of commands"
"List of commands"
"Navigation list of commands" *
"Phone list of commands"
"Radio list of commands"
"SD card list of commands"
"USB list of commands"
"Voice instructions list of commands"
"Voice settings list of commands"
"Help"

* This command is only available when your vehicle is equipped with the navigation system, and the navigation system SD card is in the card slot.

Voice Command Settings

These allow you to customize the level of system interaction, help and feedback. The system defaults to standard interaction that uses candidate lists and confirmation prompts as these provide the highest level of guidance and feedback.

- **Interaction Mode:** Novice mode provides detailed interaction and guidance. Advanced mode has less audible interaction and more tone prompts.
- **Confirmation Prompts:** The system uses these short questions to confirm your voice command. If turned off, the system simply makes a best guess as to what you requested. The system may still occasionally ask you to confirm a voice command.
- **Phone and Media Candidate Lists:** Candidate lists are lists of possible results from your voice commands. The system creates these lists when it has the same confidence level of several options based on your voice command.

Using the touchscreen, press the settings icon, then press:

Message
Settings
Voice Control
Select from the following:
Interaction Mode
Confirmation Prompts
Media Candidate Lists
Phone Candidate Lists
Voice Control Volume

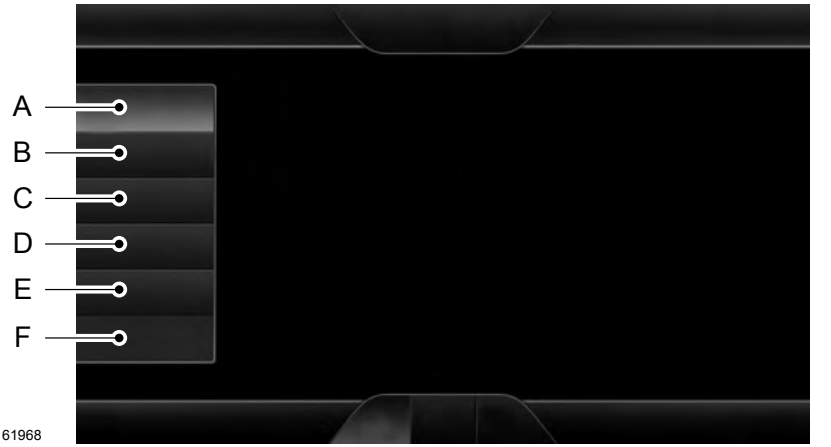
Using the steering wheel control, press the voice button and when prompted say one of the following:

Voice command
interaction mode novice
interaction mode advanced
confirmation prompts on
confirmation prompts off
phone candidate lists on
phone candidate lists off
media candidate lists on
media candidate lists off
voice settings help

Using Voice Commands with the Touchscreen Options

Your voice system has a dual mode feature which allows you to switch between using voice commands and making on-screen selections. This is available only when the system displays a list of candidates generated during a voice session. For example, when entering in a street address or trying to call a contact from the phone you paired to the system.

SETTINGS



A Clock
B Display
C Sound
D Vehicle
E Settings
F Help

Under this menu, you can set your clock, access and adjust the display, sound and vehicle settings as well as access settings for specific modes or the help feature.

Clock

Note: *You cannot manually set the date. Your vehicle 's GPS does this for you.*

Note: *If the battery has been disconnected, your vehicle needs to acquire a GPS signal to update the clock. Once your vehicle acquires the signal, it may take a few minutes for the update to display the correct time.*

1. Press the Settings icon > **Clock**.
2. Press **+** and **-** to adjust the time.

From this screen, you can also make other adjustments such as 12-hour or 24-hour mode. If your vehicle has an Navigation system you can also activate GPS time synchronization and have the system automatically update new time zones.

Note: *Your system won't adjust to daylight saving time automatically.*

You can also switch the outside air temperature display off and on. It appears at the top centre of the touchscreen, next to the time and date.

The system automatically saves any updates you make to the settings.

Display

You can adjust the touchscreen display through the touchscreen or by pressing the voice button on your steering wheel controls and when prompted, say, "Display settings".



Press the Settings icon > **Display**, to access and make adjustments using the touchscreen.

- **Brightness** allows you to make the screen display brighter or dimmer.
- **Auto DIM**, when set to **On**, lets you use the Auto Dim Manual Offset feature. When set to **Off**, screen brightness does not change.
- **Mode** allows you to set the screen to a certain brightness or have the system automatically change based on the outside light level, or switch the display off.
  - If you select **AUTO** or **NIGHT**, you have the options of switching the display's Auto Dim feature on or off and changing the Auto Dim Manual Offset feature.
- **Auto Dim Manual Offset** allows you to adjust screen dimming as the outside lighting conditions change from day to night. This feature also allows you to adjust screen brightness using the instrument panel dimming control.
- **Edit Wallpaper**
  - You can have your touchscreen display the default photo or upload your own.

Uploading Photos for Your Home Screen Wallpaper

Note: *You cannot load photos directly from your camera. You must access the photos either from your USB mass storage device or from an SD card.*

Note: *Photographs with extremely large dimensions (such as 2048 x 1536) may not be compatible and appear as a blank (black) image on the display.*

Your system allows you to upload and view up to 32 photos.



To access, press the Settings icon > **Display** > **Edit Wallpaper**, and then follow the system prompts to upload your photographs.

Only photographs that meet the following conditions display:

- Compatible file formats are as follows: .jpg, .gif, .png, .bmp.
- Each file must be 1.5 MB or less.
- Recommended dimensions: 800 x 384.

Sound



Press the Settings icon > **Sound**, then select from the following:

Sound
Bass
Midrange
Treble
Set Balance and Fade
DSP Occupancy*
EQ Mode*
Adaptive Volume

* Your vehicle may not have these sound settings.

Vehicle



Press the Settings icon > **Vehicle**, then select from the following:

- Ambient Lighting (If Equipped)
- Camera Settings
- Enable Valet Mode

Ambient Lighting (If Equipped)

When you turn this feature on, ambient lighting illuminates various places, such as the footwells, with a choice of colors. To access and make adjustments:



1. Press the Settings icon > **Vehicle** > **Ambient Lighting**.
2. Touch the desired color.
3. Use the scroll bar to increase or decrease the intensity.

To turn the feature on or off, press the power button.

Camera Settings

This menu allows you to access settings for your camera.



Press the Settings icon > **Vehicle** > **Camera Settings**, then select from the following settings:

- Enhanced Park Aids (If Equipped)
- Rear Camera Delay.

You can find more information on the rear view camera in your vehicle **Owner Manual**.

Enable Valet Mode

Valet mode allows you to lock the system. No information is accessible until the system is unlocked with the correct PIN. You can create your own four-digit PIN to lock and unlock the system.



1. Press the Settings icon > **Vehicle** > **Enable Valet Mode**.
2. Enter a four-digit PIN twice, as prompted.

After you press **Continue**, the system locks until you enter the PIN again.

Note: *If the system locks, and you need to reset the PIN, enter 3681 and the system unlocks.*

Settings

Access and adjust system settings, voice features, as well as phone, navigation and wireless settings.

System



Press the Settings icon > **Settings** > **System**, then select from the following:

System	
Language	Select to have the touchscreen display in different languages.
Distance	Select to display units in kilometers or miles.
Temperature	Select to display units in Celsius or Fahrenheit.
System Prompt Volume	Adjust the volume of voice prompts from the system.
Touch Screen Button Beep	Select to have the system beep to confirm choices made through the touchscreen.
Touch Panel Button Beep*	Select to have the system beep to confirm button choices made through the climate or audio system.
Keyboard Layout	Have the touchscreen keyboard display in QWERTY or ABC format.
Install Applications	Install any downloaded applications or view the current software licenses.
Master Reset	Select to restore factory defaults. This erases all personal settings and personal data.

* Your vehicle may not have this feature.

Voice Control



Press the Settings icon > **Settings** > **Voice Control**, then select from the following:

Voice control	
Interaction Mode	Novice interaction mode provides more detailed interaction and guidance. Advanced mode has less audible interaction and more tone prompts.
Confirmation Prompts	Have the system ask you short questions if it has not clearly heard or understood your request.*
Media Candidate Lists	Candidate lists are possible results from your voice commands. The system simply makes a best guess at your request with these switched off.

Voice control	
Phone Candidate Lists	Candidate lists are possible results from your voice commands. The system simply makes a best guess at your request with these switched off.
Voice Control Volume	This allows you to adjust the system's voice volume level.

* Even with confirmation prompts switched off, the system may occasionally ask you to confirm settings

Media Player



Press the Settings icon > **Settings** > **Media Player**, then select from the following:

Media player	
Autoplay	When this feature is on, the system automatically switches to the media source upon initial connection. This allows you to listen to music during the indexing process. When this feature is off, the system does not automatically switch to the inserted media source.
Bluetooth Devices	Select to connect, disconnect, add or delete a device. You can also set a device as your favorite so that the system automatically attempts to connect to that device at every ignition cycle.
Gracenote Database Info	This allows you to view the version level of the Gracenote Database.
Gracenote Management	With this feature on, the Gracenote Database supplies metadata information for your music files. This overrides information from your device. This feature defaults to off.
Cover Art Priority	With this feature on, the Gracenote Database supplied cover art for your music files. This overrides any art from your device. This feature defaults to Media Player.

Navigation (If Equipped)



Press the Settings icon > **Settings** > **Navigation**, then select from the following:

Navigation	
Map Preferences	Switch breadcrumbs on and off.
	Have the system display your turn list top to bottom or bottom to top.
	Switch the Parking POI notification on and off.
Route Preferences	Choose to have the system display the Shortest, Fastest or most Ecological route first. If you set **Always Use Preferred Route** to **Yes**, the system uses the selected route type to calculate only one route to the desired destination. **Always Use Preferred Route** bypasses route selection in destination programming. The system only calculates one route based on the preferred route setting. **Eco Time Penalty** allows you to select a low, medium or high cost for the calculated Eco Route. The higher the setting, the longer the time allotment is for the route.
	Have the system avoid motorways.
	Have the system avoid tollroads.
	Have the system avoid ferries or car trains.
Navigation Preferences	Have the system use guidance prompts.
	Have the system automatically fill-in Country/Province information.
	Have the system activate hazard spot warning in countries where legally allowed.
Traffic Preferences	Have the system avoid traffic problems automatically.
	Switch traffic alert notifications on and off.
	Have the system display accident icons.
	Have the system display traffic jam icons.
	Have the system display closed roads.
	Have the system display areas where roadwork occurs.
	Have the system display incident icons.
	Have the system display areas where difficult driving conditions may occur.

Navigation	
	Have the system display areas where snow and ice on the road may occur.
	Have the system display any smog alerts.
	Have the system display weather warnings.
	Have the system display where there may be reduced visibility.
	Have the system switch on your radio for traffic announcements.
Avoid Areas	Enter specific areas that you would like to avoid on planned navigation routes.

Phone



Press the Settings icon > **Settings** > **Phone**, then select from the following:

Phone	
Bluetooth Devices	Connect, disconnect, add or delete a device, as well as save it as a favorite.
Bluetooth	Switch Bluetooth on and off.
Do Not Disturb	Have all calls go directly to your voice mail and not ring inside your vehicle. With this feature switched on, text message notifications are also suppressed and do not ring inside your vehicle.
Emergency Assistance*	Switch on or switch off Emergency Assistance feature. See **Information** (page 270).
Phone Ringer	Select the type of notification for phone calls - ring tone, beep, text to speech, or have it be silent.
Text Message Notification	Select the type of notification for text messages - alert tone, beep, text to speech, or have it be silent.

Phone	
Internet Data Connection	If compatible with your phone, you can adjust your internet data connection. Select to make your connection profile with the personal area network or to switch off your connection. You can also choose to adjust your settings or have the system always connect, never connect when roaming or query on connect. Press **?** for more information.
Manage Phonebook	Access features, such as automatic phonebook download, re-download your phonebook, add contacts from your phone as well as delete or upload your phonebook.
Roaming Warning	Have the system alert you when in Roaming mode.

* Your vehicle may not have this feature.

Wireless & Internet

Your system has a Wi-Fi feature that creates a wireless network within your vehicle, thereby allowing other devices (such as personal computers or phones) in your vehicle to speak to each other, share files or play games. Using this Wi-Fi feature, everyone in your vehicle can gain access to the internet if your connected phone is activated and setup for internet tethering.



Press the Settings icon > **Settings** > **Wireless & Internet**, then select from the following:

Wi-fi	
Wi-Fi Settings	**Wi-Fi Network (Client) Mode** turns the Wi-Fi feature on and off in your vehicle. Make sure you switch it on for connectivity purposes.
	Choose a Wireless Network allows you to use a previously stored wireless network. You can categorize by alphabetical listing, priority and signal strength. You can also choose to search for a network, connect to a network, disconnect from a network, receive more information, prioritize a network or delete a network.
	Gateway (Access Point) Mode makes SYNC an access point for a phone or a computer when switched on. This forms the local area network within your vehicle for things such as, game playing, file transfer and internet browsing. Press **?** for more information.

Wi-fi	
	Gateway (Access Point) Settings allows you to view and change settings for using SYNC as the internet gateway.
	Gateway (Access Point) Device List allows you to view recent connections to your Wi-Fi system.
USB Mobile Broadband	Instead of using Wi-Fi, your system can also use a USB mobile broadband connection to access the internet. (You must switch on your mobile broadband device on your personal computer before connecting it to the system.) This screen allows you to set up what is your typical area for your USB mobile broadband connection. (USB mobile broadband settings may not display if the device is already on.) You can select the following: Country, Carrier, Phone Number, User Name and Password.
Bluetooth Settings	Shows you the currently paired devices as well as giving you your typical Bluetooth options to connect, disconnect, set as favorite, delete and add device. Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG.
Prioritise Connection Methods	Choose your connection methods and change them as needed. You can select to Change Order and have the system either always attempt to connect using a USB mobile broadband or using Wi-Fi.



E142626

The Wi-Fi CERTIFIED Logo is a certification mark of the Wi-Fi Alliance.

Help



Press the Settings icon > **Help**, then select from the following:

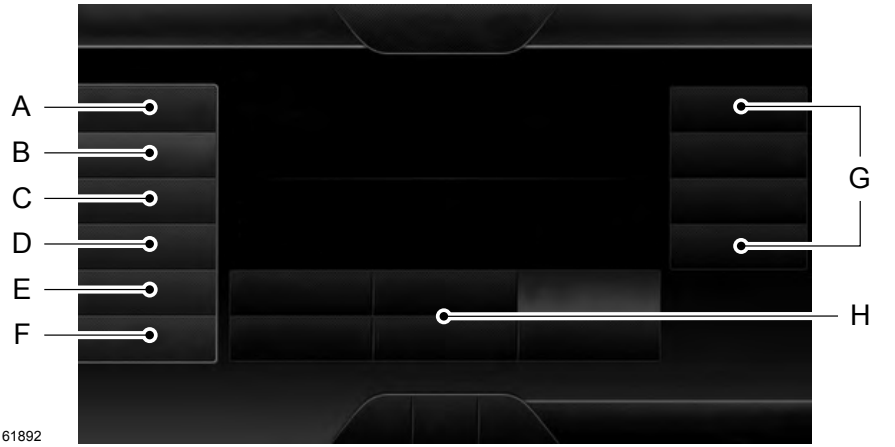
Help	
System Information	Touchscreen system serial number
	Your vehicle identification number (VIN)
	Touchscreen system software version

Help	
	Navigation system version
	Map database version
	Gracenote Database Information and Library version
Software Licenses	View the licenses for any software and applications installed on your system.
Driving Restrictions	Certain features are not accessible when your vehicle is moving.
Emergency Assistance*	Switch on and switch off the Emergency Assistance feature. See **Information** (page 270). **In Case of Emergency (ICE) Speed Dial:** allows you to save up to two numbers as ICE contacts for quick access if there is an emergency. Select **Edit** to access your phonebook and then select the desired contacts. The numbers then appear as options on this screen for the ICE 1 and ICE 2 buttons. The ICE contacts you select appear at the end of the Emergency Assistance call process.
Voice Command List	View categorized lists of voice commands.

* Your vehicle may not have this feature.

To access Help using the voice commands, press the voice button, then, after the tone, say "Help". The system provides allowable voice commands for the current mode.

ENTERTAINMENT



A AM 1 and AM AST
B FM 1, FM 2 and FM AST
C DAB1, DAB2 and DAB3
D CD
E USB
F Touch this button to scroll down for more options, such as BT audio, SD card and Line in
G These buttons change with the media mode you are in.
H Radio memory presets and CD controls.

Note: *Some features may not be available in your area. Contact an authorized dealer for more information.*

You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

Browsing Device Content

When listening to audio on a device, you can browse through other devices without having to change sources. For example, if you are currently listening to audio on an SD card, you can browse all the artists that are stored on your USB device.



Browse Within Devices

Press the voice button and when prompted say one of the following:

Voice command	
Browse	*
Browse SD card	
Browse USB	
Help	

* If you only say browse, you can then say any commands in the following chart.

Browse

Voice command	
SD card	*
USB	*
Help	

* For more commands in SD card or USB mode, see the "SD Card and USB Port" section of this chapter.

The voice system allows you to change audio sources with a simple voice command. For example, if you are listening to music on a USB device, then want to switch to a DAB radio channel, simply press the voice button on the steering wheel controls and say the number of the DAB preset. The following voice commands are available at the top level of the voice session no matter which current audio source you are listening to (for example a USB device or DAB radio).

Press the voice button and when prompted say any of the following:

Voice command	
<87.5-108>	
<522-1710>	
AM <522-1710>	
FM <87.5-108>	
play [album] [by [artist]]	*
play [artist]	*
play [genre]	*
play [playlist]	*
play [song | track | title | file]	*
Play <name>	
Play <name (song or album)> by <artist name>	

* The commands that have [ ] around the word means that the word is optional. For example, if you say, "Play Metallica", this is the same as the voice command, "Play [artist] <name>".

AM/FM Radio



Touch the **AM** or **FM** tab to listen to the radio.

To change between AM and FM presets, just touch the **AM** or **FM** tab.

Memory Presets

Save a station by pressing and holding one of the memory preset areas. There is a brief mute while the radio saves the station. Sound returns when finished.

TA

When active TA interrupts active audio source to provide incoming traffic announcements.

Note: *This feature may not be supported by the broadcasting station in your area. Contact an authorized dealer for more information.*

Scan

Touch this button to scan through the AM/FM band. The system remains for several seconds on each station that it finds. Press this button again to stop the scan.

Info (DAB only)

When the info button is pressed, the system shows the corresponding block number for the active DAB radio station. If you press the info button a second time the radio station name is displayed again.

Options

Sound Settings

Touch this button to adjust settings for:

Message
Bass
Midrange
Treble
Set Balance and Fade
DSP Occupancy*
EQ Mode*
Adaptive volume

* Your vehicle may not have these sound settings.

Radio Text

This allows you to view the information broadcast by FM stations.

AST

AST (Autostore) allows you to have the system automatically store the six strongest stations in your current location.

News Announcement

With news announcement option active the system will interrupt active audio source to provide incoming news announcements, if currently tuned station (or last tuned station in case of other media active) supports news.

Regional

With Regional option active the system will stay on the regional subprogram instead of switching to a different frequency with better reception.

Alternate Frequency

With alternative frequency option active the system will re-tune to a different frequency with better reception for the same station.

Service Linking

With Service Linking active the system will automatically switch from DAB to FM, in case DAB becomes unavailable.

Note: *This feature may not be supported by the broadcasting station in your area. Contact an authorized dealer for more information.*

Radio Voice Commands



Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice command	
Radio	
Then any of the following:	
<87.5-108>	
<522-1710>	
AM	
AM <522-1710>	
AM AST	
AM AST preset <#>	
AM preset <#>	
Browse	[1]
FM	
FM <87.5-108>	
FM AST	
FM AST preset <#>	
FM preset <#>	
FM 1	
FM 1 preset <#>	
FM 2	
FM 2 preset <#>	
DAB	
DAB1	
DAB2	
DAB3	
DAB Preset <#>	
DAB1 Preset <#>	
DAB2 Preset <#>	
DAB3 Preset <#>	
Preset <#>	
Radio off	
Radio on	
Set PTY	
Tune	
Help	

[1] If you have said browse, see the **Browse** chart later in this section.

CD



To access, press the lower left corner on the touchscreen, then select:

Message
CD

Insert your CD then select:

Message	Action and Description
Repeat	Touch this button to repeat the currently playing track, all tracks on the disc or turn the feature off if already on.
Shuffle	Touch this button to play the tracks or entire albums in random order, or turn the feature off if already on.
Scan	Touch this button to hear a brief sampling of all available tracks.
More Info	Touch this button to see disc information.
Browse	Touch this button to look through all available CD tracks.

To adjust the Sound Settings Select:

Message
Options
Sound Settings
Then any of the following:
Bass
Midrange
Treble
Set Balance and Fade
DPS Occupancy
EQ Mode
Speed Compensated Volume

Note: *Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.*

CD Voice Commands



If you are listening to a CD, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands.

If you are not listening to a CD, press the voice button and, after the tone, say "CD", then any of the following commands.

Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice command	Action and Description
CD	
Then say any of the following:	
pause	
play	
[play] next track	
[play] previous track	
"Play track <1-512>"	
Repeat	
repeat [all | folder | track | song] off	*
shuffle [all] [on]	
Shuffle CD	*
Shuffle Folder	*
shuffle off	
Help	

*This applies to WMA or MP3 files only.

SD Card Slot and USB Port

The SD card slot and USB port are located in the Media Hub.

SD Card

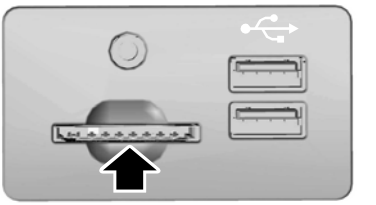
Note: *Your SD card slot is spring-loaded. To remove the SD card, press the card in and the system ejects it. Do not attempt to pull the card to remove it as this could cause damage.*

Note: *The navigation system also uses this card slot. See* ***Navigation*** *(page 275).*

Note: *Separate SD cards must be used for Navigation and Music. Do not use the SD card supplied with the vehicle for navigation (if equipped) for anything except navigation. See* ***Navigation*** *(page 275).*

Note: *Music cannot be played using the SD card slot if the navigation SD card is in use.*

Using SD card slot for Music



E175710

The SD card slot is located either in the centre console compartment bin or below the audio control buttons in the instrument panel. To access and play music from your device, press the lower left corner of the touchscreen.

SD logo is a trademark of SD-3C, LLC.

USB Port



E175711

The USB ports are located either in the centre console compartment bin or below the audio control buttons in the instrument panel. To access and play music from your device, press the lower left corner of the touchscreen.

This feature allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks, flash drives or thumb drives, and charge devices if they support this feature.

Playing Music from Your Device

Note: *The system is capable of indexing up to 30,000 songs.*



Insert your device and select:

Message	Action and Description
USB	Once the system recognizes your USB or SD card you can then select from the following options:
SD Card	
Repeat	This feature replays the currently playing song or album.
Shuffle	Touch this button to play music on the selected album or folder in random order.
Similar Music	This feature allows you to choose music similar to what is currently playing.
More Info	Touch this button to see disc information, for example current track, artist name, album and genre.
Options	Touch this button to view and adjust various media settings.

Sound

Sound settings allows you to adjust settings for:

Message	Action and Description
Bass	
Midrange	
Treble	
Set Balance and Fade	
DPS (Digital Signal Processing) Occupancy	
EQ Mode	
Adaptive Volume	
Media Player Settings	Allows you to select more settings, which is under Media Player. See **Settings** (page 238).
Device Information	Displays software and firmware information about the currently connected media device.
Update Media Index	Indexes your device when you connect it for the first time and each time the content changes (for example adding or removing tracks) to make sure you have the latest voice commands available for all media on the device.

Note: *Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.*

Browse

This feature allows you to view the contents of the device. It also allows you to search by categories, for example genre, artist or album.

If you want to view song information, for example Title, Artist, File, Folder, Album, and Genre, touch the on-screen album art.

You can also select:

Message	Action and Description
What's Playing	To hear how the system pronounces the current band and song. This can be helpful when using voice commands to make sure the system correctly plays your request.

USB and SD Card Voice Commands

Note: *Your vehicle may not have all these voice commands.*



Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice command	
USB SD card	
Then any of the following:	
Browse	*
[play] next track	
pause	
play	
play [album] [by [artist]]	
play all	
play [artist]	
Play audiobook <name>	
Play author <name>	
Play composer <name>	
Play folder <name>	
play [genre]	
play [playlist]	
Play podcast <name>	
Play podcast episode <name>	
[play] (similar music | more like this)	
play [song | track | title | file]	
[play] previous track	
repeat [all | folder | track | song] off	
Repeat off	
Repeat one	
shuffle [all] [on]	
Shuffle album	
shuffle off	
What's this?	
Help	

* If you have said you would like to browse your USB or SD card, the system prompts you to specify what you would like to browse. See the following **Browse** chart.

Browse

Voice command	
Album <name>	
All albums	
All artists	
All audiobooks	
All authors	
All composers	
All folders	
All genres	
All playlists	
All podcasts	
All songs	
Artist <name>	

Voice command	
Audiobook <name>	
Author <name>	
Composer <name>	
Folder <name>	
Genre <name>	
Playlist <name>	
Podcast <name>	
Help	

Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player, including iPod, Zune™, plays from device players, and most USB drives. Supported audio formats include MP3, WMA, WAV and AAC.

It is also able to organize your indexed media from your playing device by metadata tags. Metadata tags, which are descriptive software identifiers embedded in the media files, provide information about the file.

If your indexed media files contain no information embedded in these metadata tags, SYNC may classify the empty metadata tags as unknown.

Bluetooth Audio

The system allows you to stream audio over your vehicle's speakers from your connected, Bluetooth-enabled cell phone.



To access, press the lower left corner on the touchscreen, then select:

Message
BT Audio

Bluetooth Audio Voice Commands



Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice command
Bluetooth audio
Then say any of the following:
Next song
play
pause
[play] previous track

Line in

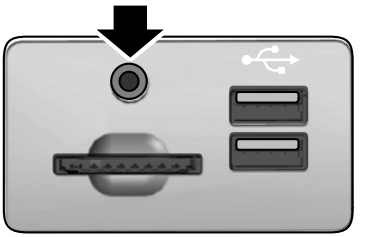
WARNINGS

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

WARNINGS

For safety reasons, do not connect or adjust the settings on your portable music player while your vehicle is moving.

Store the portable music player in a secure location, for example the center console or the glove box, when your vehicle is moving. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while your vehicle is moving.



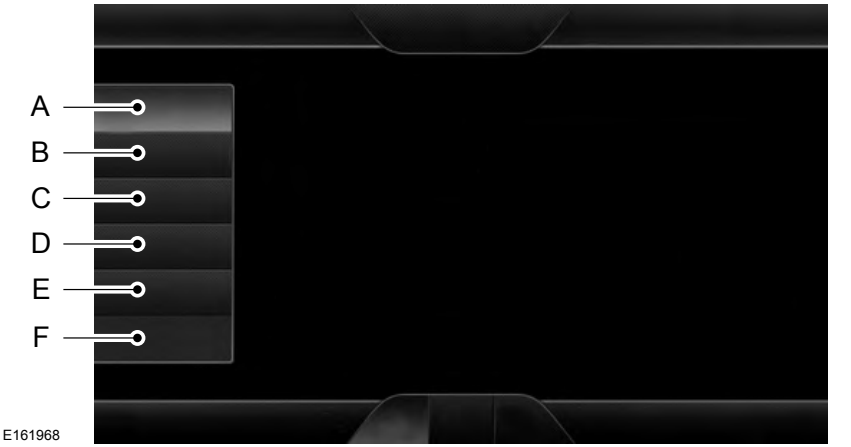
E191800

You can use the auxiliary input jack to play music from your portable music player over your vehicle's speakers. Plug in your 1/8 inch (3.5 millimeter) connector into the aux jack. Press the lower left corner of the touchscreen, and then select **Line in**.

Troubleshooting

- Do not connect the audio input jack to a line level output. The jack only works correctly with devices that have a headphone output with a volume control.
- Do not set the portable music player's volume level higher than is necessary to match the volume of the FM radio as this causes distortion and reduces sound quality.
- If the music sounds distorted at lower listening levels, turn the portable music player volume down. If the problem persists, replace or recharge the batteries in the portable media player.
- Control the portable media player in the same manner when used with headphones, as the auxiliary input jack does not provide control (for example Play or Pause) over the attached portable media player.

PHONE



Item	Message
A	Phone
B	Speed Dial
C	Phonebook
D	Call History
E	Messaging
F	Settings

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. Once you pair your cell phone, you can access many options using the touchscreen or voice commands. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cell phone's functionality.

At a minimum, most cell phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Dialing a number.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller ID.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's user manual. For more information, visit the regional Ford website **www.fordsync.com**

Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

The first thing you must do to use the phone features of SYNC is to pair your Bluetooth-enabled cell phone with SYNC. This allows you to use your cell phone in a hands-free manner.

Touch the upper left corner of the touchscreen:

Message	Action and Description
Add device	
Find SYNC	Follow the on-screen instructions. Make sure that Bluetooth is set to **On** and that your cell phone is in the correct mode. See your cell phone's manual if necessary. Select **SYNC** and a six-digit PIN appears on your device. If you are prompted to enter a PIN on your device, it does not support Secure Simple Pairing. To pair, enter the PIN displayed on the touchscreen. Skip the next step. When prompted on your cell phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cell phone. The display indicates when the pairing is successful. SYNC may prompt you with more cell phone options. For more information on your cell phone's capability, see your cell phone's manual and visit the website.

Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones

Note: *We recommend pairing your device whilst the vehicle is stationary. Switch your vehicle ignition and the radio on.*

Make sure that Bluetooth is set to **On** and that your cell phone is in the correct mode. See your device's manual if necessary.

To pair a subsequent cell phone, select:

Message	Action and Description
Add device	
Find SYNC	Follow the on-screen instructions. Make sure that Bluetooth is set to **On** and that your cell phone is in the correct mode. See your cell phone's manual if necessary. Select **SYNC** and a six-digit PIN appears on your device. If you are prompted to enter a PIN on your device, it does not support Secure Simple Pairing. To pair, enter the PIN displayed on the touchscreen. Skip the next step. When prompted on your cell phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cell phone. The display indicates when the pairing is successful. SYNC may prompt you with more cell phone options. For more information on your cell phone's capability, see your cell phone's manual and visit the website.

Making Calls



Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice command
Call <name>
dial [[a] number]



To end the call, touch the End button on the screen.

Note: *You can also end the call or exit phone mode by pressing and holding the phone button on the steering wheel.*

Redialling



Press the phone button on the steering wheel. A message will display on the screen showing the last dialled phone number.

To redial, select:

Message
Redial

Note: *You can press the phone button on the steering wheel twice in a row to immediately dial the last number.*

Receiving Calls



During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Call information appears in the display if it is available.

To accept the call, select:

Message
Accept

Note: *You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.*



To reject the call, select:

Message
Reject

Note: *You can also reject the call by pressing and holding the phone button on the steering wheel.*

Ignore the call by doing nothing. SYNC logs it as a missed call.

Phone Menu Options

Press the top left corner on the touchscreen to select from the following options:

Phone

Touch this button to access the on-screen numerical pad to enter a number and place a call. During an active call, you can also choose any of these options:

Message
Handsfree off
Hold call
Mute call
Join calls
End call

Speed Dial

Select and call contacts stored in your phonebook contacts and call history folder.

Phonebook

Touch this button to access and call any contacts in your previously downloaded phonebook. The system places the entries in alphabetical categories summarized at the top of the screen.

To turn on contact picture settings, if your device supports this feature, select:

Message
Phone
Settings
Manage Phonebook
Display photos from Phonebook
On

Certain smartphones may support transferring street addresses when listed with phonebook contact information. If your cell phone supports this feature, you can select and use these addresses as destinations and save them as favorites (for navigation equipped vehicles only).

Call History

After you connect your Bluetooth-enabled cell phone to SYNC, you can access any previously dialed, received or missed calls. You can also choose to save these to your Favorites or to Speed Dial.

Note: *This is a cell phone-dependent feature. If your cell phone does not support downloading call history using Bluetooth, SYNC keeps track of calls made with the SYNC system.*

Messaging

Send text messages using the touchscreen. See **Text messaging** later in this section.

Settings

Touch this button to access various phone settings, for example turning Bluetooth on and off, managing your phonebook and more. See **Phone settings** later in this section.

Text Messaging

WARNING

Local laws may prohibit some or all of the text messaging functions while driving. Check your local road rules before using these functions.

Note: *Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are cell phone-dependent features.*

Note: *Certain features in text messaging are speed-dependent and not available when your vehicle is traveling at speeds over 5 km/h.*

Note: *SYNC does not download read text messages from your cell phone.*

You can send and receive text messages using Bluetooth, read them aloud and translate text messaging acronyms, for example LOL.

Touch the top left corner of the display, then select:

Message
Phone
Messaging
Then any of the following:
Listen (speaker icon)

Message
Dial
Send Text
View
Delete
Delete All

Composing a Text Message

Note: *This is a speed-dependent feature. It is unavailable when your vehicle is traveling at speeds over 5 km/h.*

Note: *Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are cell phone-dependent features.*

To compose and send a text message, select:

Message	Action and Description
Phone	
Messaging	
Send Text	Enter a cell phone number or choose from your phonebook.
Edit Text	Allows you to customize the pre-defined message or create a message on your own.
Send	Sends the message as it is.

You can then preview the message, verify the recipient as well as update the message list, and send it to a connected device, for example a USB drive.

Text Message Options

Message
I'll call you back in a few minutes.
I just left, I'll be there soon.
Can you give me a call?
I'm on my way.
I'm running a few minutes late.
I'm ahead of schedule, so I'll be there early.
I'm outside.
I'll call you when I get there.
OK
Yes
No
Thanks
Stuck in traffic.
Call me later.
LOL

Receiving a Text Message

Note: *If you select View and your vehicle is traveling over 5 km/h, the system offers to read the message to you instead of allowing you to view it while driving.*

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the screen displays a pop-up with the caller name and ID, if supported by your cell phone. You can select:

Message	Action and Description
View	To view the text message.
Listen	For SYNC to read the message to you.
Dial	To call the contact.
Ignore	To exit the screen.

Phone Settings

To enter the phone settings menu select:

Message	Action and Description
Phone	
Settings	
Then any of the following:	
Bluetooth Devices	Connect, disconnect, add or delete a device, as well as save it as a favorite.
Bluetooth	To turn Bluetooth off or on.

Message	Action and Description
Do Not Disturb	If you want all calls to go directly to your voicemail and not ring in the vehicle. When this feature is on, text message notifications do not ring inside the cabin either.
Emergency Assistance (If Equipped)	Switch the Emergency Assistance feature on or off. See **Information** (page 270).
Phone Ringer	Select the ring tone you want to hear when you receive a call. Choose from possible system ring tones, your currently paired cell phone's ring tone, a beep, text-to-speech or a silent notification.
Text Message Notification	Select a text message notification, if supported by your cell phone. Choose from possible system alert tones, text-to-speech or silent.
Internet Data Connection	If your cell phone is compatible, use this screen to adjust your internet data connection. Select to make your connection profile with the personal area network or to turn off your connection. You can also choose to adjust your settings or have the system always connect, never connect when roaming or query on connect. Press **?** for more information.
Manage Phonebook	To access features such as automatic phonebook download, re-download your phonebook, add contacts from your cell phone as well as delete or upload your phonebook.
Roaming Warning	To have the system alert you when your cell phone is in roaming mode.

Phone Voice Commands



Press the voice button and when prompted say any of the following:

Voice command	
Call	
call [[a] name]	
Call <name> at <location>	3
Call voicemail	

Voice command	
dial [[a] number]	
Do not disturb off	
Do not disturb on	
Forward text messages	
Go to hands free	[1]
(hold call off | take call off hold)	[1]
(hold call [on] | place call on hold)	[1]
join (calls | call)	[1]
Listen to text message <#>	
Listen to text messages	
Text messages	[2]
mute call [on]	[1]
Pair phone	
Privacy on	[1]
Reply to text messages	
(turn ringer off | silent mode [on])	
(turn ringer on | silent mode off)	
(mute call off | un-mute call)	[1]
Help	

[1] These commands are only available during an active call.

[2] If you say messages, see the following additional commands.

[3]Location options include: at home, at work, on cell and other.

Voice command
Call
Forward text messages
Listen to text message <#>
Listen to text messages
Reply to text messages
Help

Using Siri on Your iPhone

iPhone users can access Siri by pressing and holding the voice button on the steering wheel. Please refer to your iPhone User Guide for further information about using Siri.

Emergency Assistance (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

For this feature to work, your cell phone must be Bluetooth capable and compatible with SYNC.

Always place your cell phone in a secure location inside your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent Emergency Assistance from working correctly.

Unless the Emergency Assistance setting is set to on prior to a crash, the system will not attempt to place an emergency call which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death.

WARNINGS

Do not wait for Emergency Assistance to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time. If you do not hear Emergency Assistance within five seconds after the crash, the system or cell phone may be damaged or nonfunctional.

Note: *Before setting the feature on, please read the important notice about the Ford SYNC Emergency Assistance feature and the Emergency Assistance privacy notice later in this section for important information.*

Note: *When you turn Emergency Assistance on or off, the setting will apply for all paired cell phones. If you have turned Emergency Assistance off and a previously paired phone connects when you switch the ignition on, either a voice message plays, a display message or icon is shown or both.*

Note: *Every cell phone operates differently. While SYNC Emergency Assistance works with most cell phones. Some cell phones may experience difficulties using this feature.*

Note: *For important information regarding airbag deployment. See* ***Owner Manual****.*

Note: *Ford is not the provider of the emergency services contacted by SYNC when an emergency call is initiated. Ford does not accept any liability in relation to the provision, quality or timeliness of those services.*

In the event of a crash which deploys an airbag or activates the fuel pump shut-off, the system may be able to contact emergency services (including call center) through a paired and connected cell phone. For more information about SYNC and Emergency Assistance visit your regional Ford website **www.fordsync.com**

Setting Emergency Assistance On

Note: *If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, this feature also can be accessed via touching the **I** (Information) icon > **Apps**.*

Additionally, you are allowed to edit up to 2 **In Case of Emergency (ICE) Quick Dial** from your phonebook. Press **Edit** to access this feature.

Touch the corner of the touchscreen with the yellow tab, and then press **Settings** > **Emergency Assistance** and then select to turn **Emergency Assistance** and **Emerg. Assist. Reminder** ON or OFF.

Display options:

If you switch on this feature, a confirmation message appears in the display when your cell phone connects and your vehicle starts.

If you switch off this feature, the dialog allows you to set a reminder.

Off with reminder provides a display and voice reminder when your cell phone connects and your vehicle starts.

Off without reminder provides a display reminder only without a voice reminder when your cell phone connects.

To make sure that Emergency Assistance works correctly:

- The system must have power and be working correctly at the time of the crash and during feature activation and use.
- You must switch on the feature before a crash.
- You must have a cell phone connected to the system.
- In certain countries, it may be necessary to have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in order to place and maintain an emergency call.
- A connected cell phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the crash.
- A connected cell phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- Your vehicle must have battery power.

In the Event of a Crash

Note: *Not every crash will deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off (the triggers for Emergency Assistance). However, if Emergency Assistance is triggered, SYNC tries to contact the emergency services. If a connected cell phone is damaged or loses connection to SYNC during a crash, SYNC searches for and tries to connect to any available previously paired cell phone and will attempt to make an emergency call.*

The Emergency Assistance Call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time (approximately 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If the call is not cancelled SYNC will attempt to dial emergency services.
- SYNC speaks the following or a similar message to vehicle occupants if Emergency Assistance is triggered: "SYNC will attempt to make an emergency call. To cancel the call, please choose cancel from the screen or press the hang up button".
- If the call has not been cancelled and a successful call is made, an introductory message is played first for the emergency operator, followed by hands-free communication between your vehicle occupant and the operator.

During an Emergency Assistance call:

- Emergency Assistance alerts the emergency operator of the crash and delivers an introductory message, which may include your vehicle's GPS coordinates.
- After the delivery of the introductory message the voice line will open so that you can have a hands-free conversation with the emergency operator. SYNC will say "line open" or similar at the start of hands-free communication.
- Once connected, be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location information to assist emergency services.

Note: *Failure to cancel the call as described above will result in SYNC dialing emergency services.*

Note: *While information is being provided to the emergency operator you will hear the following or similar message "Please stand by while important information is being delivered to the emergency operator".*

Note: *The emergency operator may also receive information from the mobile network such as phone number, and cell phone carrier name independent from the SYNC Emergency Assistance system.*

Emergency Assistance may not work if:

- Your cell phone or Emergency Assistance hardware has been damaged in a crash.
- Your vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- Your phone is thrown from your vehicle during a crash.
- You do not have a valid and registered SIM card with credit.
- You do not have a connected cell phone with the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call, adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- You modified any hardware or software of related modules, such as SYNC, Restraint System, GPS, Message Gateway, etc.
- You are in a location where the SYNC Emergency Assistance call cannot be placed. See your regional Ford website for details at **www.fordsync.com**

Important Information about Ford SYNC™ Emergency Assistance

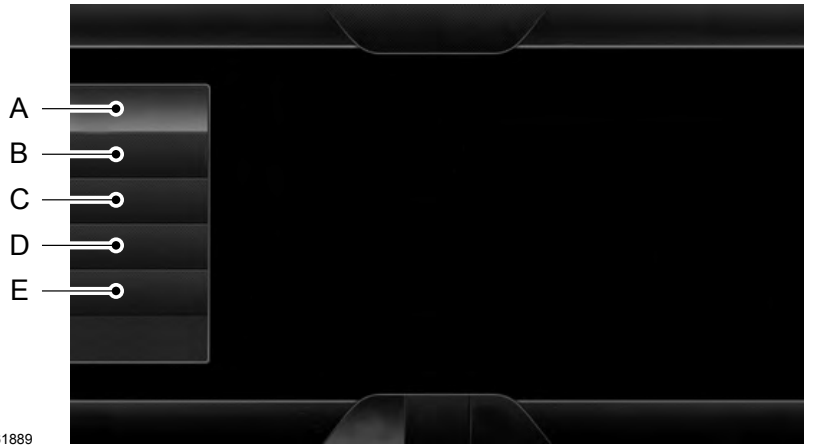
Emergency Assistance may not call emergency services in some regions or markets. See your regional Ford website for latest details at **www.fordsync.com**

Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice

When you turn Emergency Assistance on, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. This feature has the capability to disclose your location information to the emergency operator or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency operator to provide the most appropriate emergency services.

If you do not want to disclose this information, do not turn the feature on.

INFORMATION



E161889

Item	Message
A	Traffic*
B	Notific.
C	Calendar
D	Apps
E	Where am I?*

* Your vehicle may not have these features.

If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, press the **Information** button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, press the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

Notific.

If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, touch the i (Information) button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, touch the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

Press Notific., and then choose from any of the following services:

Message	Action and Description
View	View the complete message
Delete	Delete the message
Delete All	Delete all messages

This screen displays any system messages (such as an SD card fault).

Note: *The system alerts you to any messages by turning the information icon yellow. After you read or delete the messages, the icon returns to white.*

Calendar

If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, touch the i (Information) button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, touch the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

Press **Calendar**. You can view the current calendar by day, week or month.

Where am I?

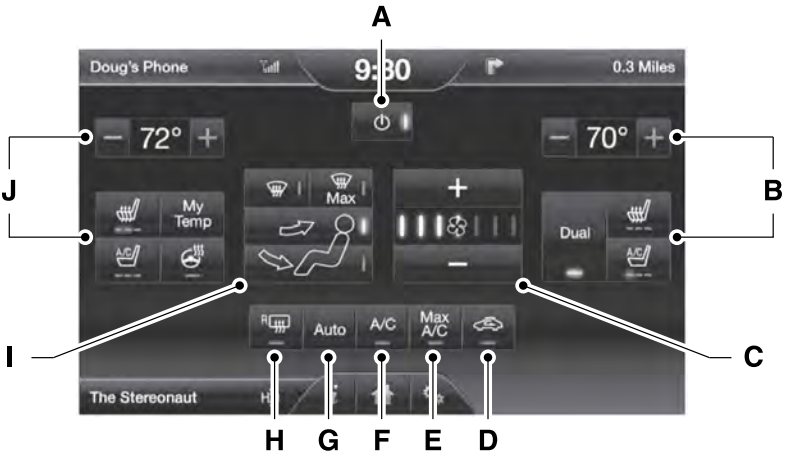
View your vehicle's current location.

CLIMATE

Touch the lower right corner on the touchscreen to access your climate control features. Depending on your vehicle line and option package, your climate screen may look different from this screen.

Note: *You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. See* ***Settings*** *(page 238).*

Note: *Some options may appear slightly different or not at all, depending on the specification of your vehicle.*



A **Power:** Touch the button to turn the system on and off. Switching off the climate control system prevents outside air from entering the vehicle on most vehicle types.

B **Passenger settings:**

Touch the **+** or **–** to increase or decrease the air temperature on the passenger side of the vehicle.

Touch the heated seat icon to turn the heated seat off and on (if equipped).

Touch the climate-controlled seat icon to turn the climate-controlled seat off and on (if equipped).

Touch **DUAL** to turn separate passenger side temperature controls off and on. When you turn off DUAL, the passenger side temperature changes to match the driver side temperature (if equipped).

Note: If your vehicle doesn't have the **DUAL** function please refer to your owners manual for details on how to link the passenger and driver temperature.

Note: The passenger side temperature and the **DUAL** indicator automatically turn on when the passenger is adjusting their temperature control.

Note: The maximum difference between driver and passenger setpoints may be limited. Whenever you make an adjustment that would result in a larger difference, both setpoints change together. Setpoints automatically begin changing independently from one another once an adjustment is made that reduces difference below the limit.

Note: See the following Smart Zone Feature section for more information on the **DUAL** button.

C **Fan speed:** Touch **+** or **-** to increase or decrease the volume of air circulated in your vehicle.

Note: When the system is controlling the fan speed automatically, all the fan speed indicators turn off.

D **Recirculated air:** Touch the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. When you select recirculated air, the air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior (when used with **A/C**) and may reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

Note: Recirculated air may turn off automatically (or be prevented from turning on) in all airflow modes except **MAX A/C** to reduce risk of fogging. Recirculated air may also turn on and off automatically in **Panel** or **Panel and Floor** airflow modes during hot weather in order to improve cooling efficiency.

E **MAX A/C:** Touch the button to maximize cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed (if equipped).

F **A/C:** Touch the button to turn air conditioning compressor on or off. Use air conditioning with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

Note: In certain conditions (such as when using Max Defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even after you switch off the air conditioning with the **A/C** button.

G **AUTO:** Touch the button to turn on automatic operation. Select the desired temperature using the temperature control. The system adjusts fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and selects outside air or recirculated air to heat or cool the vehicle in order to maintain the desired temperature. You can also use the **AUTO** button to turn off dual zone operation by touching and holding the button for more than two seconds.

H **Heated rear window:** Turns the heated rear window on and off.

I **Air distribution control:** Touch these buttons to turn airflow from the windshield, instrument panel, or footwell vents on or off. The system can distribute air through any combination of these vents.

MAX Defrost: Touch the button to maximize defrosting. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed. You can use this setting to defog or clear a thin covering of ice from the windshield. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select MAX Defrost (if equipped).

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when MAX Defrost is on.

J **Driver settings:**

Touch the **+** or **–** to increase or decrease the air temperature on the passenger side of the vehicle.

Touch the heated seat icon to turn the heated seat off and on (if equipped).

Touch the climate-controlled seat icon to turn the climate-controlled seat off and on (if equipped).

Touch **MyTemp** to select your preset temperature setpoint. Touch and hold **MyTemp** to save a new preset temperature setpoint (if equipped).

Touch the heated steering wheel icon to turn the heated steering wheel on and off (if equipped).

Note: *If your vehicle is equipped with a wood-trimmed steering wheel, it does not heat between the 10 o'clock and 2 o'clock positions.*

Climate Control Voice Commands

Note: *Your vehicle may not have all these voice commands or uses different temperature ranges.*



Press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands:

Voice commands
Climate automatic
Climate my temperature
Climate off
Climate on
Climate set temperature <15.5-29.5> degrees
Climate set temperature <60-85> degrees
Help

There are additional climate control commands. To access then say:

Voice Commands
Climate
Then you can say any of the following commands:
A/C off
A/C on
Automatic
Decrease fan speed
Defrost off
Defrost on
Dual off
Floor on
Increase fan speed
MAX A/C off
MAX A/C on
My temp
Off
On
Panel floor on
Panel off
Panel on
Rear defrost off
Rear defrost on
Recirc off
Recirc on
Temperature*
Set temperature <15.5-29.5> degrees
Set temperature <60-85> degrees
Temperature decrease
Max Temperature on
Temperature increase
Min Temperature On
Defrost floor on
Help

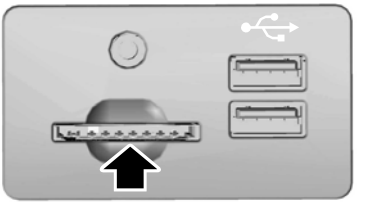
*If you say "Temperature", see the following additional commands.

To access the temperature options say:

Voice commands
Temperature
Then you can say any of the following commands:
<15-30> degrees
<60-85> degrees
Max
Min
Help

NAVIGATION

Using SD card slot for Navigation



E175710

The SD card slot is located either in the centre console compartment bin or below the audio control buttons in the instrument panel.

Note: *The navigation SD card must be in the SD card slot to operate the navigation system. If you require a replacement SD card, see an authorized dealer.*

Note: *Handle the SD card with care to avoid contamination or damage. Never touch the metal contacts. Do not clean the SD card with anything other than a soft cloth. Never attempt to use an SD card that has been cracked, deformed or repaired using adhesive, as doing to may damage the equipment. Do not put on any sticker or write anything on the SD card. Do not attempt to alter the data contained on the SD card in any way.*

Note: *The SD card slot is spring-loaded. To remove the SD card, just push the card in and release it. Do not attempt to pull the card out to remove it; this could cause damage.*

Note: *Certain features in Navigation are speed dependant and are not available when traveling more than 5 km/h.*

Note: *Separate SD cards must be used for Navigation and Music. Do not use the SD card supplied with your vehicle for anything other than navigation.*

Note: *Navigation cannot be used in the SD card slot if the music SD card is in use.*

Your navigation system is comprised of two main features, destination mode and map mode.

Destination Mode

To set a destination press the green corner of your touchscreen, then the press:

Message
Dest
Choose any of the following:
My Home
Favorites
Previous Destinations
Place of Interest
Emergency*
Address
Junction
Town Centre
Map
Edit Route
Cancel Route

* Your vehicle may not have this feature.

To set your destination, enter the necessary information into the highlighted text fields (in any order).

For an address destination entry, press:

Message	Action and Description
Go!	Pressing this button makes the address location appear on the map.

To choose a previous destination, press:

Message	Action and Description
Previous Destination	The last 20 destinations you have selected appear.

Once you have chosen your destination press:

Message	Action and Description
Set as Dest	To make this your destination. You can also choose to set this as a waypoint (have the system route to this point on the way to your current destination) or save it as a favorite. You can then choose your route from three different options. Fastest: Uses the fastest moving roads possible. Shortest: Uses the shortest distance possible. Eco Route: Uses the most fuel-efficient route.
Avoid Areas	Your pre-set selections are considered when your route is calculated. For more information on these selections, see **Setting Your Navigation Preferences** later in this chapter.

To begin navigation press:

Message	Action and Description
Start Route	You can cancel the route or have the system demo the route for you. During route guidance, you can press the talking bubble icon that appears in the upper right navigation corner (green bar) if you want the system to repeat route guidance information. When the system repeats the last guidance instruction, it updates the distance to the next guidance instruction, since it detects when the vehicle is moving.

To set route preferences press:

Message	Action and Description
Route Prefs	In route preferences you can set preferences like avoiding freeways, tollroads, ferries and car trains or tunnels.

Note: *If your vehicle is on a recognized road and you do not press the* ***Start Route*** *button, the system defaults to the Fastest Route option and begins guidance.*

Place of Interest (POI) Categories

Note: *Some options may appear slightly different or not at all, depending on the market.*

Main categories

Message
Food/Drink & Dining
Automotive
Travel and Transportation
Automotive
Shopping
Financial
Entertainment & Arts
Emergency
Recreation & Sports
Community
Government
Health and Medicine
Domestic Services

To expand these listings, press the + in front of the listing.

The system also allows you to sort alphabetically or by distance.

Setting Your Navigation Preferences



Select settings for the system to take into account when planning your route.

To access the settings options, press

Message
Settings
Navigation
Then select any of the following:

Map Preferences

Message	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions	
Map Preferences		
Then select any of the following:		
Breadcrumbs	Display your vehicle's previously traveled route with white dots. You can switch this feature:	
	ON	OFF
Turn List Format	Have the system display your turn list	
	Top to Bottom	Bottom to Top
Parking POI Notification	When parking point of interest notification is on, the icons display on the map when you get close to your destination. This may not be very useful in dense areas, and may clutter the map when other points of interest display. Set the automatic parking point of interest notification. You can switch this feature:	
	ON	OFF

Route Preferences

Message	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions	
Route Preferences		
Then select any of the following:		
Preferred Route	Set the automatic parking point of interest notification. When parking point of interest notification is on, the icons display on the map when you get close to your destination. This may not be very useful in dense areas, and may clutter the map when other points of interest display. Switch this feature:	
	ON	OFF
Always Use Preferred Route	Bypass route selection in destination programming. The system only calculates one route based on preferred route setting.	

Message	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions	
Eco Time Penalty	Select a low, medium or high cost for the calculated Eco Route. The higher the setting, the longer the time allotment is for the route.	
Avoid	These features allow you to choose to have the system avoid freeways, toll roads, ferries, car trains and tunnels when planning your route. Switch these features:	
	ON	OFF

Navigation Preferences

Message	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions	
Navigation Preferences		
Then select any of the following:		
Guidance Prompts	Select the type of prompts the system uses. You can select:	
	Voice & Tones	Tone Only
Auto - Fill Country	Have the system automatically fill in the state and province based on the information already entered into the system. You can switch this feature:	
	ON	OFF
Hazard spot warning	Have the system activate hazard spot warning in countries where legally allowed.	

Traffic Preferences

Message	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions
Traffic Preferences	
Then select any of the following:	
Avoid Traffic Problems	You can choose how you want the system to handle traffic problems along your route.

Message	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions	
	Automatic	Have the system reroute you to avoid traffic incidents that develop and impact the current route. The system does not provide a traffic alert notification
	Manual	Have the system always provide a traffic alert notification for traffic incidents along the planned route. You have a choice to accept or ignore the notification before making the route deviation.
Avoid Areas	Choose areas which you want the system to avoid when calculating a route for you	
	Once you make a selection, the system tries to avoid the area(s) if possible for all routes. To program an entry, press:	Add
	To delete a section choose the listing on the screen. The screen will change, then press:	Delete

Map Mode

Press the green bar in the upper right area of the touchscreen to view map mode. Map mode shows advanced viewing comprised of both 2D city maps as well as 3D landmarks (when available).

2D city maps show detailed outlines of buildings, visible land use and land elements and detailed railway infrastructure for the most essential cities around the globe. These maps also contain features, such as town blocks, building footprints and railways.

3D landmarks appear as clear, visible objects that are typically recognizable and have a certain tourist value. The 3D landmarks appear in 3D map mode only. Coverage varies and improves with updated map releases.


E174016

Change the appearance of the map display by repeatedly pressing the arrow button in the upper left corner of the screen. It toggles between three different map modes: Heading up, North up and 3D.

Heading up (2D map) always shows the direction of forward travel to be upward on the screen. This view is available for map scales up to 5 kilometers. The system remembers this setting for larger map scales, but shows the map in North up only. If the scale returns below this level, the system restores Heading up.

North up (2D map) always shows the northern direction to be upward on the screen.

3D map mode provides an elevated perspective of the map. This viewing angle can be adjusted and the map can be rotated 180 degrees by touching the map twice, and then dragging your finger along the shaded bar with arrows at the bottom of the map.

View switches between full map, street list and exit view in route guidance.

Menu displays a pop-up box that allows direct access to navigation settings, View/Edit Route, Guidance Mute and Cancel Route.

Press the speaker button on the map to mute route guidance. When the light on the button illuminates, the feature is on. The speaker button appears on the map only when route guidance is active.

Re-center the map by pressing this icon whenever you scroll the map away from your vehicle's current location.

Auto Zoom

Press the green bar to access map mode, then select the **+** or **-** zoom button to bring up the zoom level and Auto buttons on the touchscreen. When you press **Auto**, Auto Zoom turns on and **Auto** displays in the bottom left corner of the screen in the map scale. The map zoom level then synchronizes with vehicle speed. The slower your vehicle is traveling, the farther in the map zooms in; the faster your vehicle is traveling, the farther the map zooms out. To switch the feature off, just press the **+** or **-** button again.

In 3D mode, rotate the map view by swiping your finger across the shaded bar with the arrows.

The ETA box under the zoom buttons appears when a route is active and displays the distance and time to your destination. If the button is pressed, a pop up appears with the destination listed (and waypoint if applicable) along with mileage and time to destination. You may also select to have either the estimated time to reach your destination or your estimated arrival time.

Map Icons

Vehicle mark shows the current location of your vehicle. It stays in the center of the map display, except when in scroll mode.



Scroll cursor allows you to scroll the map; the fixed icon is in the center of the screen. The map position closest to the cursor is in a window on the top center part of the screen.



Address book entry default icon(s) indicates the location on the map of an address book entry. This is the default symbol shown after the entry has been stored to the Address Book by any method other than the map. You can select from any of the 22 icons available. You can use each icon more than once.



Home indicates the location on the map currently stored as the home position. You can only save one address from the Address Book as your Home entry. You cannot change this icon.



POI (Point Of Interest) icons indicate locations of any point of interest categories you choose to display on the map. You can choose to display three point of interest categories on the map at one time.



Starting point indicates the starting point of a planned route.



Waypoint indicates the location of a waypoint on the map. The number inside the circle is different for each waypoint and represents the position of the waypoint in the route list.



Destination symbol indicates the ending point of a planned route.



Next maneuver point indicates the location of the next turn on the planned route.



No GPS symbol indicates that insufficient GPS satellite signals are available for accurate map positioning. This icon may display under normal operation in an area with poor GPS access.

Quick-touch Buttons

When in map mode, touch anywhere on the map display to access the following options:

Message	Action and Description
Set as Dest	Touch this button to select a scrolled location on the map as your destination. You may scroll the map by pressing your index finger on the map display. When you reach the desired location, simply let go and then touch this button.
Set as Waypoint	Touch this button to set the current location as a waypoint.
Save to Favorites	Touch this button to save the current location to your favorites.
POI Icons	Touch this button to select icons to display on the map. You can select up to three icons to display on the map at the same time. You can switch these features:

Message	Action and Description	
	On	ON
Cancel Route	Touch this button to cancel the active route.	

View/Edit Route

Access these features when a route is active:

Message
View Route.
Edit Destination/Waypoints.
Edit Turn List.
Detour.
Edit Route Preferences.
Edit Traffic Preferences.
Cancel Route.

HERE maps is the provider of map data for the navigation application. If you encounter map data anomalies, you may report them directly to HERE by going to mapcreator.here.com. HERE evaluates all reported map anomalies and responds with the result of their investigation via the map creator portal. You can check back into the portal at any time to review the outcome of your report.

Navigation Map Updates

For further information, see an authorized dealer.

Navigation Voice Commands



When in navigation mode, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. After the tone, say any of the following commands:

To use the navigation voice commands say:

Voice command	
Cancel next waypoint	1
Cancel route	1
Destination	2
Destination <nametag>	
Destination <POI category>	
Destination favorites	
Destination home	
Destination intersection	
Destination nearest <POI category>	
Destination nearest POI	
Destination play nametags	
Destination POI	
Destination POI category	
Destination previous destination	
Destination street address	
Detour	1
Navigation	3
Navigation voice volume decrease	
Navigation voice volume increase	
Repeat instruction	1

Voice command	
Show 3D	
Show heading up	
Show map	
Show north up	
Show route	[1]
Show turn list	[1]
Voice guidance off	
Voice guidance on	
Where am I?	
Zoom in	
Zoom out	
Help	

[1] These commands are only available when a navigation route is active.

[2] If you say "Destination", you can then say any command in the following "Destination" chart.

[3] If you say "Navigation", you can then say any command in the following "Navigation" chart.

Destination

Voice command
<nametag>
<POI category>
Favorites
Home
Intersection
Nearest <POI category>
Nearest POI
Play nametags
POI category
Previous destination
Street address
Help

Navigation

Voice command	
Destination	*
Zoom city	
Zoom country	
Zoom minimum	
Zoom maximum	
Zoom province	
Zoom state	
Zoom street	
Zoom to <distance>	
Help	

* If you say "Destination", you can then say any command in the "Destination" chart.

One-shot Destination Street Address

To use One-Shot Destination Street Address voice commands say:

Message	Action and Description
Find an address	The system asks you to say the full address. You can then speak the address naturally, such as "One two three four Main Street, Anytown".

Traffic Information

Traffic information is provided through an arrangement with Intelematics Australia Pty Ltd. For license terms and conditions refer to the Appendices. Traffic information is based on data provided with the permission of one or more third parties. Please note: Should Ford's arrangement with Intelematics Australia Pty Ltd cease for any reason, the ongoing provision of traffic information cannot be guaranteed.

SYNC™ TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, see the tables below.

Phone Issues		
Issue	**Possible Cause(s)**	**Possible Solution(s)**
There is excessive background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your phone may be affecting SYNC performance.	Review your phone's manual about audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	This may be a possible phone malfunction.	Try turning off the device, resetting the device, removing the device's battery, then trying again.
SYNC is not able to download my phonebook.	This is a phone-dependent feature. This may be a possible phone malfunction.	Go to your local Ford website to review your phone's compatibility. Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again. Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by using the Add Contacts feature.
The system says Phonebook Downloaded but the phonebook in SYNC is empty or missing contacts.	This may be a limitation on your phone's capability.	Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by using the Add Contacts feature.

Phone Issues		
Issue	**Possible Cause(s)**	**Possible Solution(s)**
		If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, try moving them to the device memory. Remove any pictures or special ring tones associated with the missing contact. Depending upon your phone, you may have to grant SYNC permission to access your phonebook contacts. Make sure to confirm when prompted by your phone during the phonebook download.
I am having trouble connecting my phone to SYNC.	This is a phone-dependent feature. This may be a possible phone malfunction.	Go to your local Ford website to review your phone's compatibility. Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again. Try deleting your device from SYNC, deleting SYNC from your device and trying again. Check the security and auto accept and prompt always settings relative to the SYNC Bluetooth connection on your phone. Update your device's firmware. Turn off the Auto phonebook download setting.
Text messaging is not working on SYNC.	This is a phone-dependent feature. This may be a possible phone malfunction.	Go to your local Ford website to review your phone's compatibility.

Phone Issues		
Issue	**Possible Cause(s)**	**Possible Solution(s)**
		Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again.

USB and Media Issues		
Issue	**Possible Cause(s)**	**Possible Solution(s)**
I am having trouble connecting my device.	This may be a possible device malfunction.	Try turning off the device, resetting the device, removing the device's battery, then trying again. Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable. Make sure you insert the USB cable correctly into the device and the USB port. Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.
SYNC does not recognize my device when I turn on the car.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a phone-dependent feature. The device is not connected.	Review the device compatibility chart on the local Ford website to confirm your phone supports the Bluetooth audio streaming function. Make sure you correctly connect the device to SYNC, and that you have pressed play on your device.
SYNC does not recognize music that is on my device.	Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information.	Make sure that all song details are populated.

USB and Media Issues		
Issue	**Possible Cause(s)**	**Possible Solution(s)**
	The file may be corrupted. The song may have copyright protection, which does not allow it to play.	Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to MTP class.

Voice Command Issues		
Issue	**Possible Cause(s)**	**Possible Solution(s)**
SYNC does not understand what I am saying.	You may be using the wrong voice commands. You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.	Review the phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections. After pressing the voice icon, wait until after the tone sounds and Listening appears before saying a command. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.
SYNC does not understand the name of a song or artist.	You may be using the wrong voice commands. You may be saying the name differently than the way you saved it. The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it.	Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section. Say the song or artist exactly as listed. If you say "Play Artist Prince", the system does not play music by Prince and the Revolution or Prince and the New Power Generation. Make sure you are saying the complete title, such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles". If the song titles are in all CAPS, you have to spell them. LOLA requires you to say "L-O-L-A".

Voice Command Issues		
Issue	**Possible Cause(s)**	**Possible Solution(s)**
		Do not use special characters in the title. The system does not recognize them.
SYNC does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.	You may be using the wrong voice commands. You may be saying the name differently than the way you saved it. The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it. Contacts in your phonebook may be very short and similar, or they may contain special characters. Your phonebook contacts may be in CAPS.	Review the Phone voice commands at the beginning of the phone section. Make sure you are saying the contacts exactly as they are listed. For example, if you save a contact as Joe Wilson, say "Call Joe Wilson". Using the SYNC phone menu, open the phonebook and scroll to the name SYNC is having trouble understanding. SYNC will read the name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation SYNC is expecting. The system works better if you list full names, such as "Joe Wilson" rather than "Joe". Do not use special characters, such as 123 or ICE, as the system does not recognize them. If a contact is in CAPS, you have to spell it. JAKE requires you to say "Call J-A-K-E".

Press the relevant button on the unit bezel to access the system functions. This will take you into the selected mode.

For instructions on how to operate the audio unit and the available navigation features, see the relevant audio unit procedure. See **Audio System** (page 221).

Note: *If the internal temperature of the display module is too hot, the unit displays an error message and does not work until it has cooled down.*

Loading Map Data

Note: *The indicated maximum speed may not be applicable to your vehicle. It is always your responsibility to control your vehicle, supervise any system and obey the correct speed limit. Failure to do so could result in loss of vehicle control.*

Note: *The front glass on the liquid crystal display may break if hit with a hard object. If the glass breaks, do not touch the liquid crystalline material. In case of contact with the skin, wash immediately with soap and water.*

Note: *Do not switch the ignition on or attempt to start the engine while the software is updating.*

Note: *Do not clean the unit with solvents or aerosol cleaning agents. Use only a damp cloth.*

Note: *The navigation SD card must be in the SD card slot to operate the navigation system. If you need a replacement SD card, see an authorized dealer.*

Note: *The SD card slot is spring-loaded. To remove the SD card, push the card in and release it. Do not attempt to remove the card without first pushing it in. This could cause damage.*



E129900

1. Load the navigation SD card into the slot.
2. Press the **NAV** button. The road safety warning confirms the map data import was successful.
3. The system is now ready to use.

For map updates and system upgrades, see an authorized dealer.

Note: *You can only use Ford licensed data.*

Road Safety

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *You are ultimately responsible for the safe operation of your vehicle and must evaluate whether it is safe to follow route suggestions. Navigation features are provided only as an aid. Driving decisions based on observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations must be observed. Do not follow route suggestions if they would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. Maps used by this system may be inaccurate due to errors, changes in roads, traffic or driving conditions.*

Safety Information

If detailed viewing of route instructions is necessary, pull off the road when it is safe to do so and park your vehicle.

Setting a Route

Note: *After the first entry, the country selected will remain the default option until you manually change it.*

Press the **NAV** button and select:

Message	Action
Destination input	Starting at the top, select the country followed by either the postcode or city and street name, together with the house number or intersection. Use the arrow buttons to enter the destination details.
Start guidance	Select this after entering sufficient information.

The route is calculated and the screen returns to the main navigation screen. If prompted, select the type of route you require first. Follow the screen and voice prompts to reach your destination.

Note: *If required you can select different character screens by using the up and down arrow buttons.*

Note: *If you only need to navigate to a city center, just enter the city name and start guidance.*

Note: *If you only need to navigate to a district, within a city for example, just enter the district name and start guidance.*

Menu Structure

You can access the menu using the information and entertainment display control. See **Information Displays** (page 66).

For a description on some menu items refer to the relevant table.

Note: *Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.*

Message	
Route	Active guidance
	Route sections list
	Block next section

Message		
	Unblock route sections	
Destination input	Country	
	City/postcode	
	Street	
	District	
	Start guidance	
Traffic	TA	
	TMC for route	
	All TMC	
	Block next section	
	Route sections list	
	Unblock route sections	
Home address	Start guidance	
	Change address	
Last destinations		
Favourites	Favourites (A-Z)	
Points of interest	POIs nearby	
	Near destination	
	Along motorway	
	POIs near address	
	Search by name	
Tour planning	New tour	
	Stored tours	
Store position		
Route options	Route:	Eco
		Fast
		Short

Message		
		Always ask
	Driver:	Leisurely
		Normal
		Fast
	Eco settings	Trailer:
		Roof box
	Dynamic	
	Motorway	
	Tunnel	
	Ferry/motorail	
	Toll	
	Seasonal roads	
	Toll sticker	
Special functions	GPS info	
	System info	
	Enter position	
	Demo mode	

Route Options

Press the **NAV** button and scroll to route options. You can then set your route options for any of the following.

Message		Description and Action
Route:	Always ask	Select to make sure that you are always given the choice of route option for your journey.
Eco		Uses the most fuel efficient route. Your driving style will influence this.
Fast		Uses the fastest route possible.

Message		Description and Action
Short		Uses the shortest distance possible.
Driver:	Leisurely	This option will calculate your time of arrival based on a leisurely drive to the destination.
	Normal	This option will calculate your time of arrival based on a normal drive to the destination.
	Fast	This option will calculate your time of arrival based on a fast drive to the destination.
Eco settings	Trailer:	Use this feature to change the economy settings of your journey relating to whether or not you are towing a trailer and if so the size of trailer being towed.
	Roof box	Use this feature to change the economy settings of your journey relating to the use of a roof box.
	Dynamic	When switched on, and if the unit is receiving a valid traffic message channel signal, the route will be automatically updated to take into account real time traffic incidents or congestion. This feature can be useful in avoiding delays or hold ups on journeys.
	Motorway	When switched off the system will avoid freeways on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.
	Tunnel	When switched off the system will avoid tunnels on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.
	Ferry/motorail	When switched off the system will avoid ferry crossings and car train facilities on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.

Message		Description and Action
	Toll	When switched off the system will avoid toll roads on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.
	Seasonal roads	When switched off the system will avoid seasonal roads (for example, mountain passes) on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.
	Toll sticker	When switched off the system will avoid toll routes and automatically update your route distance and timings.

Information

Press the information button to view details of your current location or journey. During active route guidance pressing this button will repeat the last navigation instruction.

Setting Your Navigation Preferences

Select settings for the system to take into account when planning your route.

Press the NAV button and choose any of the following options.

Message	Description and Action
Destination input	Enter your destination details (for example enter city names, enter street names or pick a place from a map).
Traffic	Choose how you want the system to handle traffic problems along your route (for example, block sections on route).
Home address	See the location on the map currently stored as the home position. Only one entry can be saved as the home address.
Last destinations	Access a history of previous destinations entered in the system. Select the required repeat destination from the list.
Favourites	See a list of your saved favorites.
Points of interest	Search for and select points of interest nearby, on your route or at your destination. You can search by name or by category.
Tour planning	Set up and store a new tour by entering a number of different destinations and select the order in which you wish to visit them. You can also modify an existing tour or recall a previous tour. The system will automatically calculate and display your chosen journey.

Message	Description and Action
Store position	Store and name your current position. This will automatically save in your favorites.
Route options	Set your route options from the available list.
Special functions	Select GPS and system information or a demonstration of the system functionality. Select a demonstration mode where the system will simulate a journey whilst the vehicle is stationary. You can manually select a vehicle start position.

Press the MENU button, select the navigation option and choose any of the following options.

Message	Description and Action
Route options	Set your route options.
Map display	Customize the map display for your journey (for example arrows on map, arrival times and map content).
Assistance options	Customize display information for your journey (for example signs, lanes and speed limits). Turn the hazard warning feature on or off.
Personal data	Delete personal data (for example your home address).
Reset all settings	Reset the navigation settings.

Storing Your Home Address

1. Press the **NAV** button.
2. Select the home address option.
3. Enter the required details using the arrow buttons.
4. Press the confirm function button.

Note: *Your last destination will automatically display if you go to change your home address.*

Adding a Favorite

1. Press the **NAV** button.
2. Scroll to the destination input option.
3. Enter the required details using the arrow buttons.
4. Press the store function button.

Note: *If you select store position, this will also save the destination in your favorites.*

Selecting a Favorite

1. Press the **NAV** button.
2. Select the favorites option.
3. Scroll to the required destination using the arrow buttons.
4. Press the **OK** button to start navigation.

Adjusting the Navigation Voice Level

You can adjust the voice prompt level during an active voice prompt by using the volume control.

Note: *During active route guidance pressing the information button will repeat the last navigation instruction.*

Nav Audio Mixing

This feature allows you to adjust the volume mix between the audio unit and navigation voice level.

Tolerant Destination Input

This function will search a number of destinations with a similar spelling to what you have entered. This is helpful if you are unsure on how to spell a destination.

Message	Action
Tolerant	Press the **NAV** button and scroll to this destination input option before entering your destination details.

Then begin to input your destination. Press the **OK** button. The system will search for destinations with similar spellings. Use the arrow buttons to select a destination from the list and press the **OK** button to confirm your destination.

Route Displays

Map Display

Press the **MAP** button to view map mode. This view will show your current location with your vehicle in the center shown as an arrow surrounded by a circle. The arrow will face in the direction of travel.

The information on the top line gives the name of the current road, or the next road to take if a turn is approaching.

You can change the way the map is displayed by altering the zoom and orientation settings. Press function button one. The current map scale is shown on the display.

Map scale settings may be set between 0.05 miles to 500 miles or 50 meters to 500 kilometers, with an auto setting on the top. The auto setting continuously changes the map scale according to vehicle speed and the road type being driven.

You can use the arrow buttons to change the view to 2D, turn-by-turn, 3D or a clean view.

Zoom

This feature will automatically increase the zoom on the map display at times when you are required to make a turn, or perform more complex maneuvers. Shortly after the zoom scale will return to the previous level when in auto mode.

Manual: Press function button one and adjust the setting using the left or right arrow buttons. Press **OK** to confirm your setting.

Auto: Press function button one and using the up or down arrow key select the auto option. Press **OK** to confirm your setting.

Move

When you are in map mode, press function button two. You can now use the arrow buttons on the audio unit to move around the map.

Press function button two again to return to the original view.

Navigation Display

After commencing a navigation route, the default screen is the main navigation screen.

Once an active route is underway, guidance will be given by on-screen information and voice prompts. Whichever audio source you wish to leave the unit in, basic turn by turn and distance information will remain on the screen in the form of a graphic inset. You do not need to leave the unit on the main navigation screen when you are navigating a route. Press the **MAP** button at any time to return to the main navigation screen. Slightly more detailed information on your route may be available using the main navigation screen if required.

Hazard Spot Warning

The system supports a hazard spot warning feature which informs you with visible and audible feedback about hazardous traffic areas.

Message	Description
Assistance options	You can switch the system on and off using the information and entertainment display menu. Refer to this option in the navigation menu.

Note: *This feature is only available in certain countries.*

Navigation Map Updates

Annual navigation map updates are available for purchase. See an authorized dealer.

Type Approvals

SD Logo is a trademark.

The navigation software is based in part on the work of the FreeType team © 2006

The navigation software is based in part on the work of the independent JPEG Group.

ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY

WARNINGS

Your vehicle has been tested and certified to legislations relating to electromagnetic compatibility (72/245/EEC, UN ECE Regulation 10 or other applicable local requirements). It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment you have fitted complies with applicable local legislations. Have any equipment fitted by an authorized dealer.

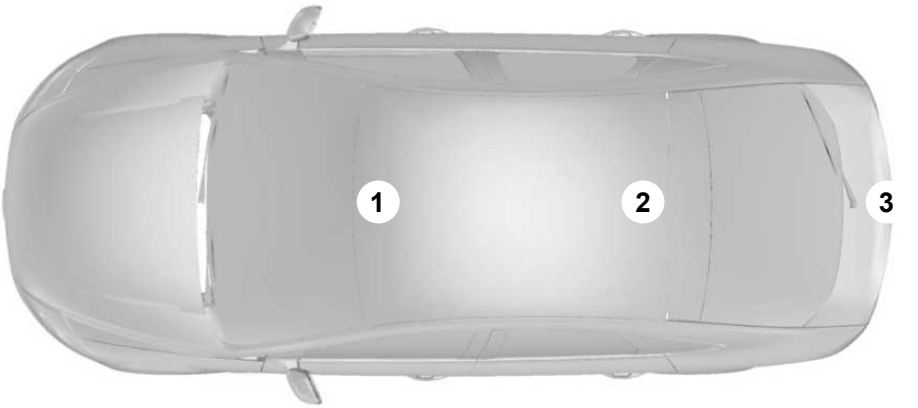
WARNINGS

The radio frequency transmitter equipment (e.g. cellular telephones, amateur radio transmitters etc.) may only be fitted to your vehicle if they keep to the parameters shown in the table below. There are no special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

Do not mount any transceiver, microphones, speakers, or any other item in the deployment path of the airbag system.

Do not fasten antenna cables to original vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

Keep antenna and power cables at least 4 inches (10 centimeters) from any electronic modules and airbags.



E170906

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1 – 30	50 W	3
31 – 54	50 W	1, 2
68 – 87.5	50 W	1, 2

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
142 – 176	50 W	1, 2
380 – 512	50 W	1, 2
806 – 940	10 W	1, 2
1200 – 1400	10 W	1, 2
1710 – 1885	10 W	1, 2
1885 – 2025	10 W	1, 2

Note: *After the installation of radio frequency transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in your vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.*

Check all electrical equipment:

- with the ignition ON
- with the engine running
- during a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside your vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

SYNC / SYNC2 End User License Agreement (EULA)

- You have acquired a device ("DEVICE") that includes software licensed by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY") from an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation ("MS") . Those installed software products of MS origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("MS SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The MS SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY. The additional software and systems of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("FORD SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The FORD SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.

- The MS SOFTWARE and/or FORD SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by third party software and service suppliers. The additional software and services of third party origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE, FORD SOFTWARE and THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE hereinafter collectively and individually will be referred to as "SOFTWARE".

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICE OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICE, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICE and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICE and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.

- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICE, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY or MS may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Security Updates/Digital Rights Management:** Content owners use the WMDRM technology included in your DEVICE to protect their intellectual property, included copyrighted content. Portions of the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE use WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected content. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the SOFTWARE's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. This action does not affect unprotected content. When your DEVICE downloads licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a revocation list with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade.
- **Consent to Use of Data:** You agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may collect and use technical information gathered in any manner as part of product support services related to the SOFTWARE or related services. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and services suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may use this information solely to improve their products or to provide customized services or technologies to you. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may disclose this information to others, but not in a form that personally identifies you.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICE.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates,

supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components").

If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply.

If MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent make available Supplemental Components, and no other EULA terms are provided, then the terms of this EULA shall apply, except that the MS, Microsoft Corporation or affiliate entity providing the Supplemental Component(s) shall be the licensor of the Supplemental Component(s).

FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The MS SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites through the use of the SOFTWARE. The third party sites are not under the control of MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent. Neither MS nor Microsoft Corporation nor their affiliates nor their designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICE operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and assumes any risk associated with the use of the DEVICE.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA: If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICE on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICE as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS: All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or their affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service providers, their affiliates and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments. For additional information, see http://www.microsoft.com/exporting/.

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, third party software or service providers, their affiliates or suppliers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Product support for the SOFTWARE is not provided by MS, its parent corporation Microsoft Corporation, or their affiliates or subsidiaries. For product support, please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICE. Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICE.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND/OR THEIR AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR ANY AMOUNT IN EXCESS OF U.S. TWO HUNDRED FIFTY DOLLARS (U.S. $250.00).

- THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY EXPRESSLY BE PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

Adobe

Contains Adobe® [Flash® Player] or [AIR®] technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated. This [Licensee Product] contains [Adobe® Flash® Player] [Adobe® AIR®] software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated, Copyright ©1995-2009 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved. Adobe, Flash and AIR are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

End User Notice

Microsoft® Windows® Mobile for Automotive Important Safety Information

This system Ford SYNC contains software that is licensed to Manufacturer FORD MOTOR COMPANY by an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation pursuant to a license agreement. Any removal, reproduction, reverse engineering or other unauthorized use of the software from this system in violation of the license agreement is strictly prohibited and may subject you to legal action.

Read and follow instructions: Before using your Windows Automotive- based system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("User's Guide"). Not following precautions found in this User's Guide can lead to an accident or other serious consequences.

Keep User's Guide in vehicle: When kept in the vehicle, the User's Guide will be a ready reference for you and other users unfamiliar with the Windows Automotive-based system. Please make certain that before using the system for the first time, all persons have access to the User's Guide and read its instructions and safety information carefully.

WARNING

Operating certain parts of this system while driving can distract your attention away from the road, and possibly cause an accident or other serious consequences. Do not change system settings or enter data non-verbally (using your hands) while driving. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations. This is important since while setting up or changing some functions you might be required to distract your attention away from the road and remove your hands from the wheel.

General Operation

Voice Command Control: Functions within the Windows Automotive-based system may be accomplished using only voice commands. Using voice commands while driving allows you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel.

Prolonged Views of Screen: Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Even occasional short scans to the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving task at a critical time.

Volume Setting: Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.

Use of Speech Recognition Functions: Speech recognition software is inherently a statistical process which is subject to errors. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system and address any errors.

Navigation Features: Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.

Distraction Hazard: Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can seriously distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious consequences. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.

Let Your Judgment Prevail: Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

Route Safety: Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.

Potential Map Inaccuracy: Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.

Emergency Services: Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the Telenav Software. Your use of the Telenav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the Telenav Software.

These terms and conditions represent the agreement (“Agreement”) between you and Telenav, Inc. (“Telenav”) with respect to the Telenav Software (including upgrades, modifications, or additions thereto) (collectively “Telenav Software”). All references herein to “you” and “your” means you, your employees, agents, and contractors, and any other entity on whose behalf you accept these terms and conditions, all of whom shall also be bound by this Agreement. Additionally, all of your account information, as well as other payment and personal information provided by you to Telenav (directly or through the use of the Telenav Software, is subject to Telenav’s privacy policy located at http://www.telenav.com.

Telenav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit http://www.telenav.com from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the Telenav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the Telenav Software: (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely; (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the Telenav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions; (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the Telenav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked; (d) do not use the Telenav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement; (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the Telenav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold Telenav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the Telenav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the Telenav Software, to provide Telenav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform Telenav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, Telenav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the Telenav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the Telenav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the Telenav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the Telenav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

You agree not to do any of the following: (a) reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the Telenav Software or any part thereof; (b) attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the Telenav Software without the prior express written consent of Telenav; (c) remove from the Telenav Software, or alter, any of Telenav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; (d) distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the Telenav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the Telenav Software; or (e) use the Telenav Software in any manner that (i) infringes the intellectual property

or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party, (ii) violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or (iii) is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the Telenav Software without advanced written permission of Telenav.

4. Disclaimers

To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will Telenav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the Telenav Software. Telenav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the Telenav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the Telenav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the Telenav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the Telenav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME

STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the Telenav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial.

This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of laws provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both Telenav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the Telenav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the Telenav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to Telenav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the Telenav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Telenav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between Telenav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, Telenav retains all right, title and interest in and to the Telenav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and Telenav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the Telenav Software, you consent to receive from Telenav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the Telenav Software (collectively, “Notices”) electronically. Telenav may provide such

Notices by posting them on Telenav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the Telenav Software.

8.4

Telenav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including," and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation."

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors:

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

TERMS AND CONDITIONS

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 20xx. All rights reserved.

Permitted Use.

You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions.

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning.

The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty.

This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty:

TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability:

TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control.

You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement.

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users.

If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a “commercial item” as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. (“FAR”) 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following “Notice of Use,” and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois 60606

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End-User Terms under which this Data was provided.

© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information."

"©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors ("Third Party Data"), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada ("NRCan"):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.
End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía ("INEGI"):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: "Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
Ecuador	"INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION Nº IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011" "source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®"
Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico	"Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice
Jordan	"© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre". The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client's license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE's database for the country of Jordan ("Jordan Data") for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, "Enterprise Applications" shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministèrie de l'Equipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

Austria	"© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	"© EuroGeographics"
France	"source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"
Germany	"Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"
Great Britain	"Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"
Greece	"Copyright Geomatics Ltd."
Hungary	"Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."
Italy	"La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."
Norway	"Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"
Portugal	"Source: IgeoE – Portugal"
Spain	"Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG"
Sweden	"Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden."
Switzerland	"Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.psma.com.au).

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelematics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: "Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors."

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2 , and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

rigCustomer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFROMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2's OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2(and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright© 2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents #5,987,525, #6,061,680, #6,154,773, #6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6.240,459, #6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device.

This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content") , Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER.

© Gracenote 2007.

Vehicle with SYNC only

United States and Mexico

FCC ID: KMHSG1G1

IC: 1422A-SG1G1

Mexico

Model: KMHSG1P1

NOM-121-SCT1-2009

The operation of this equipment is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This equipment or device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this equipment or device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Vehicle with SYNC with Touchscreen/My Touch

FCC ID: KMHSYNCG2

IC: 1422A-SYNCG2

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/.

1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/.

2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorised drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavours to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the "**Suppliers**")) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that the neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or

Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

WARNING

Operating certain parts of this system while driving can distract your attention away from the road, and possibly cause an accident or other serious consequences. Do not change system settings or enter data non-verbally (using your hands) while driving. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations. This is important since while setting up or changing some functions you might be required to distract your attention away from the road and remove your hands from the wheel.

4

4WD
See: Four-Wheel Drive....124

A

A/C
See: Climate Control....85
About This Manual....5
ABS
See: Brakes....129
ABS driving hints
See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....129
Accessories
See: Replacement Parts Recommendation....7
ACC
See: Using Adaptive Cruise Control....142
Active City Stop....157
Principle of Operation....157
Switching the System Off and On....158
Active Park Assist....135
Using the System....136
Adjusting the Steering Wheel....39
Air Conditioning
See: Climate Control....85
Air Vents....85
Center....85
Center Console....86
Side....86
Alarm
See: Anti-Theft Alarm....38
Ambient Lighting....51
Anti-Theft Alarm....38
Arming the Alarm....38
Disarming the Alarm....38
Appendices....300
At a Glance....9
Front Exterior Overview....9
Instrument Panel Overview....11
Rear Exterior Overview....13
Vehicle Interior Overview....10
Audible Warnings and Indicators....64
Automatic Transmission Warning Chime....65
Door Ajar....64
Engine On Warning Chime....64
Headlamps On Warning Chime....64
Headlight Exit Delay....64
Keyless Warning Alert....64
Parking Brake On Warning Chime....64
Seatbelt Minder....64
Audio Control....39
Type 1....40
Type 2....40
Audio Input Jack....226
Audio System....221
General Information....221
Audio Troubleshooting....228
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Premium AM/FM/CD....222
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC 2....223
Audio Unit Operation....225
Audio Unit Overview....223
Autolamps....46
Automatic Climate Control....86
Mono Mode....87
Switching Mono Mode Back On....88
Switching Mono Mode Off....88
Temperature Control....87
Automatic High Beam Control....47
Switching the System On and Off....47
Automatic Transmission - 6-Speed Automatic Transmission - 6F35/ 6-Speed PowerShift Transmission - MPS6/6DCT450....118
Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning....121
Emergency Park Position Release Lever....120
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow....122
Selector Lever Positions....119
SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission....120
Auto-Start-Stop....110
To Re-Start the Engine....110
To Stop the Engine....110
Using Auto-Start-Stop....110
Autowipers....42
Auxiliary Power Points....100
12 Volt DC Power Point....100
230 Volt AC Power Point....100

Locations....100

B

Battery
See: Changing the 12V Battery....194
Blind Spot Information System....155
Switching the System Off and On....157
System Errors....157
Using the System....155
Bonnet Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood....186
Brake Fluid Check....193
Brakes....129
General Information....129
Breaking-In....169
Brakes and Clutch....169
Engine....169
Tires....169
Bulb Specification Chart....202

C

Cabin Air Filter....91
Capacities and Specifications....219
Car Wash
See: Cleaning the Exterior....204
Catalytic Converter....115
Driving with a Catalytic Converter....115
Changing a Bulb....196
Approach Lamp....199
Central High Mounted Brake Lamp....201
Headlamp....197
Interior lamp....202
License Plate Lamp....201
Luggage Compartment Lamp, Footwell Lamp and Liftgate Lamp....202
Reading lamps....202
Rear Lamps....200
Side Repeater....199
Changing a Fuse....184
Fuses....184
Changing a Road Wheel....211
Assembling the Wheel Brace....214
Installing a Road Wheel....215
Jacking and Lifting Points....212
Locking Lug Nuts....211
Removing a Road Wheel....215
Removing the Wheel Trim....214
Stowing the Flat Tyre....216
Vehicle Jack....212
Vehicles with a Spare Wheel....211
Changing the 12V Battery....194
Remove and Reinstall the Battery....195
Changing the Wiper Blades....195
Checking Seatbelt Fit....19
Checking the Wiper Blades....195
Child Restraint Anchorage Locations....17
Upper (top tether) anchorages....17
Child Restraints....15
Child Safety....15
Child Safety Locks....19
Manual Child Safety Locks....19
Cleaning the Exterior....204
Cleaning Plastic Exterior Parts....204
Cleaning the Chrome Trim....204
Cleaning the Headlamps....204
Underbody....204
Using a Car Wash....204
Cleaning the Interior....204
Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens....205
Rear Windows....205
Seatbelts....204
Cleaning the Wheels....205
Climate....271
Climate Control Voice Commands....273
Climate Control....85
Principle of Operation....85
Clock....72
Type 1....72
Type 2....72
Cold Weather Precautions....169
Coolant Check
See: Engine Coolant Check....192
Cornering Lamps....50
Cruise Control....41
Principle of Operation....141
Cruise control
See: Using Cruise Control....141
Cup Holders....102

D

Daytime Running Lamps....47

Diesel Particulate Filter....108
Regeneration....109
Digital Radio....225
General Information....225
Direction Indicators....50
Doors and Locks....30
DPF
See: Diesel Particulate Filter....108
Driver Airbag....24
Driver Alert....151
Principle of Operation....151
Using Driver Alert....151
Driver Knee Airbag....26
Driving Aids....150
Driving Hints....169
Driving Through Water....169
DRL
See: Daytime Running Lamps....47

E

Eco Mode....158
Resetting Eco Mode....159
Type 1....159
Electromagnetic Compatibility....300
End User License Agreement....301
SYNC / SYNC2 End User License Agreement (EULA)....301
Engine Coolant Check....192
Adding Coolant....192
Engine Immobilizer
See: Passive Anti-Theft System....38
Engine Oil Check....191
Adding Oil....192
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L EcoBoost™....191
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel....191
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L EcoBoost™....191
Entertainment....248
AM/FM Radio....249
Bluetooth Audio....257
Browsing Device Content....248
CD....252
Line in....257
SD Card Slot and USB Port....253
Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information....257
Essential Towing Checks....165
Before Towing a Trailer....166
Hitches....165
Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft (PWC)....166
Safety Chains....165
Trailer Brakes....165
Trailer Lamps....165
When Towing a Trailer....166
Exterior Mirrors....55
Blind Spot Monitor....57
Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors....56
Heated Exterior Mirrors....56
Integrated Blind Spot Mirrors....57
Power Exterior Mirrors....55

F

Fastening the Seatbelts....21
Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy....21
First Aid Kit....171
Floor Mats....169
Fog Lamps - Front
See: Front Fog Lamps....48
Fog Lamps - Rear
See: Rear Fog Lamps....48
Folding Tray....102
Four-Wheel Drive....124
Principle of Operation....124
Front Fog Lamps....48
Fuel and Refueling....112
Fuel Quality - Diesel....113
Diesel-Winter Driving....113
Long-Term Storage....113
Fuel Quality - Gasoline....113
Long-Term Storage....114
Fuel Shutoff....171
Fuse Box Locations....174
Engine Compartment Fuse Box....174
Luggage Compartment Fuse Box....175
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box....174
Pre-Fuse Box....174
Fuses....174
Fuse Specification Chart....175
Engine Compartment Fuse Box....175
Luggage Compartment Fuse Box....181

Passenger Compartment Fuse Box.....179

G

Gauges.....60
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....61
Fuel Gauge.....61
Information Display.....60
Gearbox
See: Transmission.....118
General Information on Radio Frequencies.....27
Global Opening and Closing.....54
Global Closing.....55
Global Opening.....54

H

Handbrake
See: Parking Brake.....130
Hazard Flashers.....171
Headlamp Exit Delay.....46
Headlamp Leveling.....49
Recommended Headlamp Leveling Switch Positions.....49
Headlamp Removal
See: Removing a Headlamp.....196
Head Restraints.....94
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....94
Heated Seats.....99
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....91
Heated Exterior Mirror.....91
Heated Rear Window.....91
Heated Windshield.....91
Heating
See: Climate Control.....85
Hill Start Assist.....122
Switching the System On and Off.....122
Using Hill Start Assist.....122
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate.....88
Cooling the Interior Quickly.....89
General Hints.....88
Heating the Interior Quickly.....89
Maximum Cooling Performance in Instrument Panel or Instrument Panel and Footwell Positions.....91
Recommended Settings for Cooling 90
Recommended Settings for Heating.....89
Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather.....90
Vehicle Stationary for Extended Periods During Extreme High Ambient Temperatures.....90
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....129
Hood Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....186

I

Ignition Switch.....103
Starting the Engine.....104
Switching the Ignition Off.....103
Switching the Ignition On.....103
Switching the Ignition On to Accessory Mode.....103
Information Display Control.....41
Multimedia Controls.....41
Information Displays.....66
General Information.....66
Information.....270
Calendar.....271
Notific.....270
Where am I?.....271
Information Messages.....72
Active City Stop.....73
Airbag.....73
Alarm.....73
Automatic High Beam Control.....74
Battery and Charging System.....74
Blind Spot Monitor and Cross Traffic Alert System.....74
Child Power Lock.....75
Climate Control.....75
Cruise Control and Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).....76
Doors.....76
Driver Alert.....76
Engine.....77
Hill Start Assist.....78
Keyless Vehicle.....78
Lane Keeping Aid.....79
Lighting.....79
Maintenance.....80
Message Indicator.....73

Occupant Protection....80
Parking Aid....80
Parking Brake....81
Power Steering....81
Starting System....82
Start-Stop....81
Towing....83
Traction Control....84
Transmission and Four-Wheel Drive....83
Installing Child Restraints....16
Instrument Cluster....60
Instrument Lighting Dimmer....46
Interior Lamps....51
Front Interior Lamps....51
Rear Map Lamps....51
Interior Mirror....58
Auto-Dimming Mirror....58
Introduction....5

J

Jump Starting the Vehicle....172
To Connect the Booster Cables....172
To Start the Engine....173

K

Keyless Entry....35
Disabled keys....37
General information....35
Locking and unlocking the doors with the key blade....37
Locking the vehicle....35
Passive key....35
Unlocking the vehicle....36
Keyless Starting....104
Failure to Start....104
Fast Restart....106
Starting Your Vehicle....104
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving....106
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary....106
Switching the Ignition On (Accessory Mode)....104
Keys and Remote Controls....27

L

Lane Keeping System....152
Lane Keeping Aid....154
Lane Keeping Alert....152
Lighting Control....45
Headlamp Flasher....46
High Beams....45
Lighting....45
General Information....45
Load Carriers
See: Roof Racks and Load Carriers....162
Load Carrying....160
General Information....160
Locking and Unlocking....30
Locking and Unlocking the Doors from Inside....31
Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key....31
Locking the Doors Individually with the Key....31
Power Door Locks....30
Power Liftgate....31
Remote Control....30
Luggage Anchor Points....160
Luggage Retention Nets....160
Luggage Covers....162
Lug Nuts
See: Changing a Road Wheel....211

M

Maintenance....186
General Information....186
Manual Liftgate....32
Closing the Liftgate....32
Opening the Liftgate....32
Manual Seats....95
Adjusting the Height of the Driver's Seat....96
Adjusting the Lumbar Support....95
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward....95
Recline Adjustment....96
Manual Transmission....118
Selecting Reverse Gear....118
Media Hub....228

Message Center
See: Information Displays....66
Mirrors
See: Heated Windows and Mirrors....91
See: Windows and Mirrors....53
Mobile Communications Equipment....8
Moonroof....58
Bounce-Back....59
Opening and Closing the Moonroof....59
Opening and Closing the Sunscreen....59
Venting the Moonroof....59

N

Navigation....275
Destination Mode....276
Hazard Spot Warning....299
Information....296
Loading Map Data....291
Map Mode....281
Menu Structure....292
Navigation Map Updates....284
Navigation Voice Commands....284
Place of Interest (POI) Categories....278
Quick-touch Buttons....283
Road Safety....291
Route Options....294
Setting a Route....292
Setting Your Navigation Preferences....278
Type Approvals....299

O

Oil Check
See: Engine Oil Check....191
Opening and Closing the Hood....186
Closing the Hood....187
Opening the Hood....186
Overhead Console....102

P

Parking Aid....133
Parking Aids....133
Principle of Operation....133
Parking Brake....130
Passenger Airbag....25
....25
Passive Anti-Theft System....38
Arming the Engine Immobilizer....38
Coded Keys....38
Disarming the Engine Immobilizer....38
Principle of Operation....38
PATS
See: Passive Anti-Theft System....38
Personalized Settings....72
Measure Units....72
Switching Chimes Off....72
Phone....259
Emergency Assistance (If Equipped)....267
Making Calls....261
Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones....260
Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time....260
Phone Menu Options....262
Phone Settings....264
Phone Voice Commands....265
Receiving Calls....261
Redialling....261
Text Messaging....263
Power Door Locks
See: Locking and Unlocking....30
Power Liftgate....33
Closing the Liftgate....34
Hands-Free Feature....34
Programming the Liftgate....34
Power Seats....96
10-Way....97
Power Lumbar....98
Power Windows....53
Accessory Delay....54
Bounce-Back....53
One-Touch Down....53
One-Touch Up....53
Window Lock....53
Protecting Larger Children....18
Typical Booster Seat....19

R

Rear Fog Lamps....48
Rear Seat Armrest....99
Rear Seats....98
Folding the Seatback....98
Recline Adjustment....98
Unfolding the Seatback....98

Rear Under Floor Storage.....161
Adjustable Load Floor.....161
Cargo Management System.....161
Passenger Compartment Floor.....161
Rear View Camera.....137
Using the Rear View Camera System.....138
Rear View Camera
See: Rear View Camera.....137
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....43
Rear Window Washer.....44
Rear Window Wiper.....43
Recommended Towing Weights.....164
Refueling.....115
Remote Control.....27
Changing the Remote Control Battery.....27
Remote Control without a Folding Key Blade.....28
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function.....27
Removing a Headlamp.....196
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....205
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....7
Collision Repairs.....7
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs.....7
Warranty on Replacement Parts.....8
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....29
Roadside Emergencies.....171
Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....162
Running-In
See: Breaking-In.....169
Running Out of Fuel.....114
Refilling with a Portable Fuel Container.....114

S

Safety Precautions.....112
Seatbelt Height Adjustment.....22
Seatbelt Maintenance.....23
Seatbelt Reminder.....22
Rear Seatbelt Reminder.....22
Switching the Seatbelt Reminder Off.....23
Seatbelts.....20
Principle of Operation.....20
Seats.....93
Security.....38
Selecting a Child Restraint System.....16
.....16
Settings.....238
Clock.....238
Display.....239
Settings.....240
Sound.....239
Vehicle.....240
Side Airbags.....25
Side Curtain Airbags.....26
Sitting in the Correct Position.....93
Snow Chains
See: Using Snow Chains.....206
Speed Control
See: Cruise Control.....141
Speed Limiter.....150
Principle of Operation.....150
Using the System.....150
Stability Control.....132
Principle of Operation.....132
Starter Switch
See: Ignition Switch.....103
Starting a Diesel Engine.....108
Cold or Hot Engine.....108
Failure to Start.....108
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....107
Cold or Hot Engine.....107
Engine Idle Speed after Starting.....107
Failure to Start.....108
Flooded Engine.....107
Starting and Stopping the Engine.....103
General Information.....103
Steering Wheel Lock.....106
Vehicles with Keyless Starting.....107
Steering Wheel.....39
Storage Compartments.....102
Sunroof
See: Moonroof.....58
Sun Visors.....58
Illuminated Vanity Mirror.....58
Supplementary Restraints System.....24
Principle of Operation.....24
Switching Off the Engine.....109
Vehicles With a Turbocharger.....109
Symbols Glossary.....5
SYNC™ 2.....229
General Information.....229

SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....286

T

Tailgate
See: Manual Liftgate.....32
See: Power Liftgate.....33
Technical Specifications
See: Capacities and Specifications.....219
Tire Care.....206
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....207
How Temperature Affects the Tire Pressures.....208
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure.....210
Understanding the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....209
When Changing Tires.....208
When Changing Wheels.....208
When Inflating Tires.....208
Tires
See: Wheels and Tires.....206
Towing a Trailer.....163
Steep Gradients.....163
Towing Points.....167
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels.....167
All Vehicles.....167
Vehicles with Automatic Transmission.....167
Towing.....163
Traction Control.....131
Principle of Operation.....131
Trailer Sway Control.....163
Transmission.....118
Trip Computer.....72
All Value.....72
Average Fuel.....72
Digital Speedometer.....72
Distance to Empty.....72
Resetting the Trip Computer.....72
Trip Odometer.....72

U

Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....188
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel.....189
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....190
Unique Driving Characteristics.....110
USB Port.....227
Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....142
Automatic Cancellation.....146
Blocked Sensor.....147
Canceling the Set Speed.....145
Changing the Set Speed.....145
Detection Issues.....146
Following a Vehicle.....143
Forward Alert Function.....148
Hilly Condition Usage.....146
Overriding the Set Speed.....145
Resuming the Set Speed.....146
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed.....143
Setting the Gap Distance.....144
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off.....146
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On.....142
Switching to Normal Cruise Control.....149
System Not Available.....147
Using Cruise Control.....141
Switching Cruise Control Off.....141
Switching Cruise Control On.....141
Using Four-Wheel Drive.....124
Driving in Special Conditions With Four-Wheel Drive.....124
Using Snow Chains.....206
Vehicles with Stability Control.....207
Using Stability Control.....132
Using Traction Control.....131
Switching the System Off and On Using the Information Display Controls.....131
Switching the System Off Using the Switch.....131

V

Vehicle Care.....204
Vehicle Identification Number.....220
Vehicle Identification Plate.....219
Built Date.....219
Ventilation
See: Climate Control.....85

Vents
See: Air Vents....85
VIN
See: Vehicle Identification Number....220
Voice Control....41

W

Warning Lamps and Indicators....61
Anti-Lock Braking System Warning Lamp....61
Automatic High Beam Lamp....61
Battery Warning Lamp....61
Blind Spot Monitor Indicator....62
Brake System Warning Lamp....62
Cruise Control Indicator....62
Direction Indicator....62
Engine Oil Warning Lamp....62
Engine Warning Lamps....62
Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp....63
Front Airbag Warning Lamp....63
Front Fog Lamps Indicator....63
Frost warning lamp....63
Glow Plug Indicator....63
Headlamp and Parking Lamp Indicator....63
High Beam Indicator....63
Information Indicator....63
Lane Keeping System Indicator....63
Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp....63
Rear Fog Lamps Indicator....63
Shift Indicator....64
Stability Control Off Indicator....64
Stability Control Warning Lamp....64
Start-Stop Indicator....64
Warning Triangle....171
Washer Fluid Check....193
Washers
See: Cleaning the Exterior....204
See: Wipers and Washers....42
Wheel Nuts
See: Changing a Road Wheel....211
Wheels and Tires....206
General Information....206
Technical Specifications....218
Windows and Mirrors....53
Windshield Washers....43
Windshield Wipers....42
Intermittent Wipe....42
Speed Dependent Wipers....42
Wiper Blades
See: Checking the Wiper Blades....195
Wipers and Washers....42